



PARENTS' GUIDE

CONNECT

5th

PRIMARY FIVE
SECOND TERM
2024

هدية مجانية
غير مخصصة للبيع

الصف الخامس الإبتدائي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني

دار غزة
للطبع والنشر والتوزيع
ghazzahouse@gmail.com



Contents



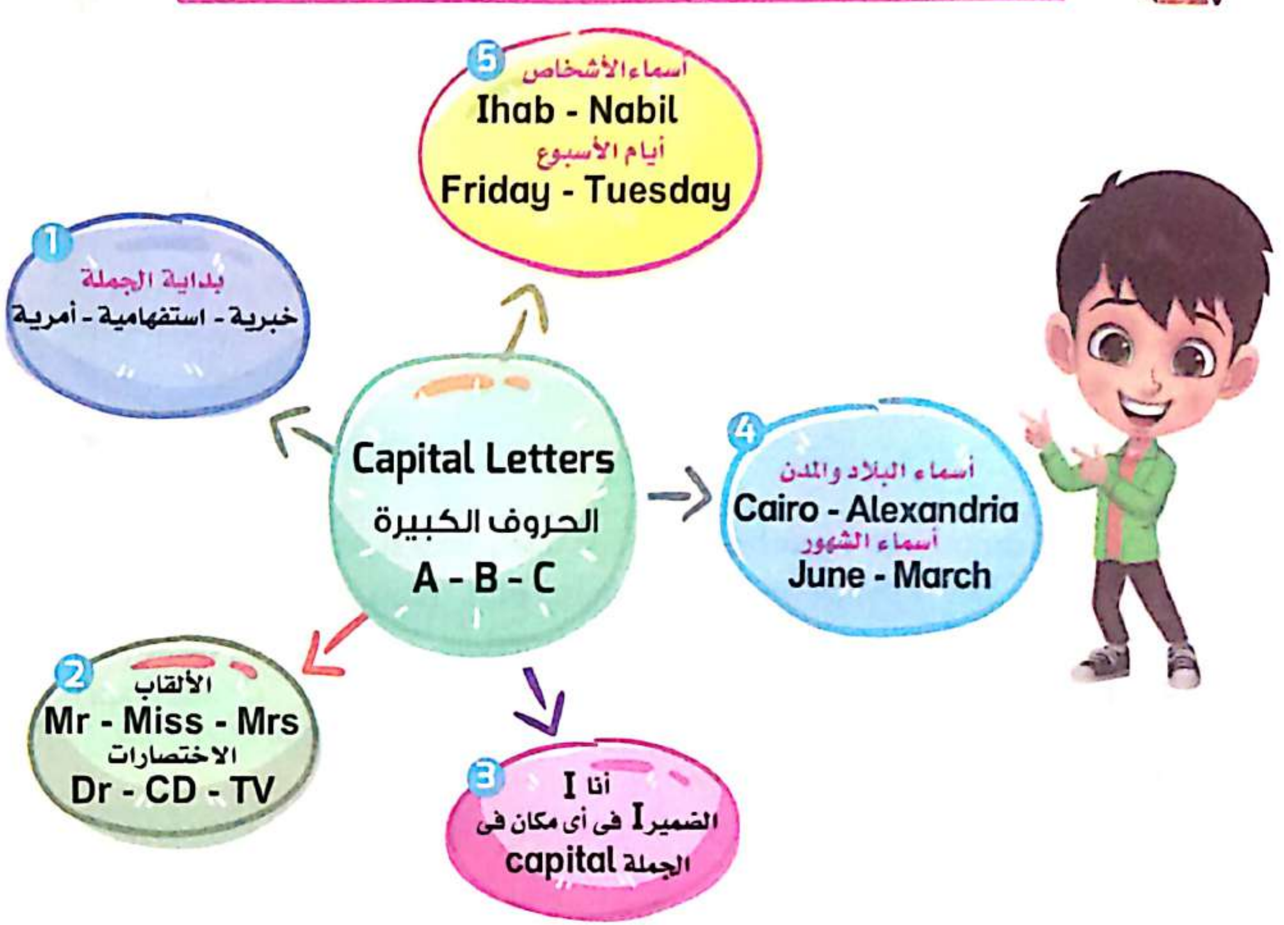




Punctuation

علامات الترقيم

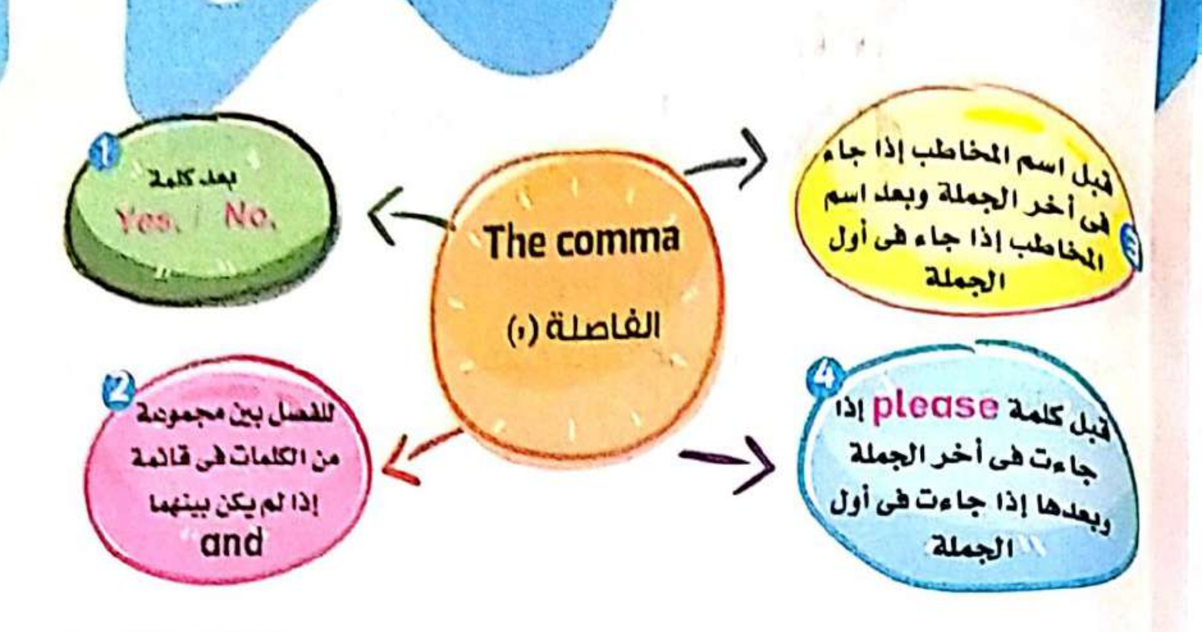




Examples:

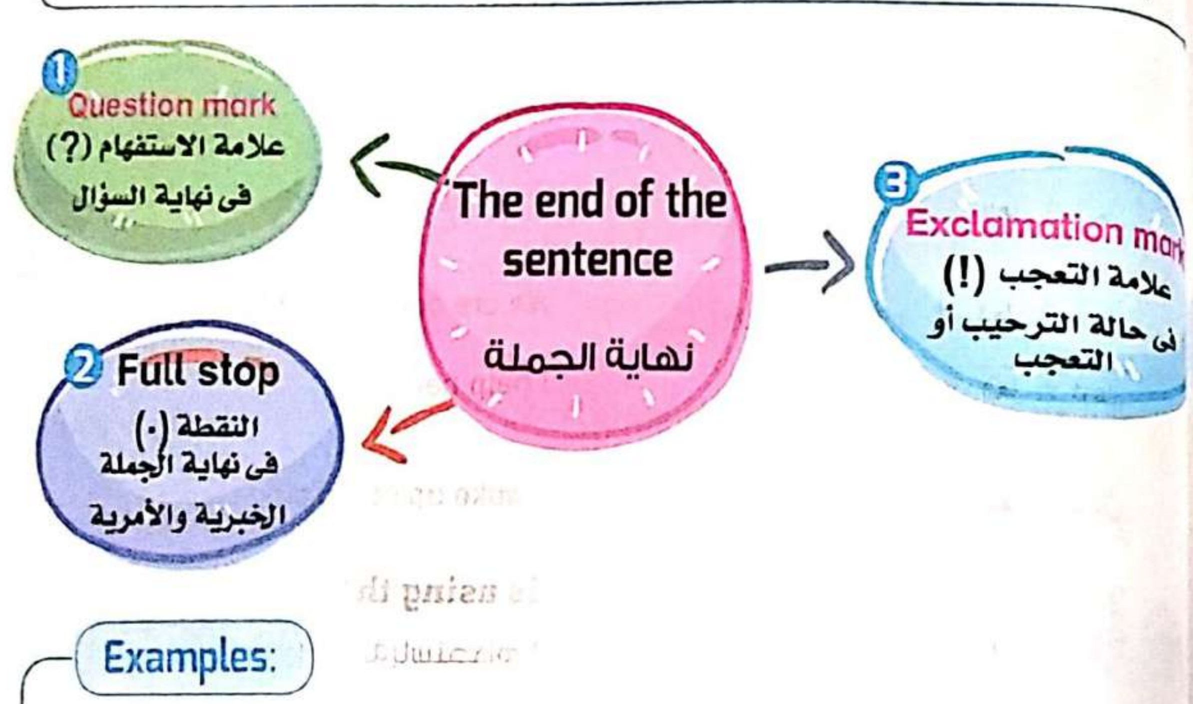
1. I like my family and friends. (جملة خبرية)
2. Take the medicine. (جملة أمرية)
3. What's your favorite color? (جملة استفهامية)
4. I have a headache. (الضمير I)
5. I went to Aswan last July. (أسماء المدن والشهور)
6. Mr Nader goes to the club on Monday. (الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)





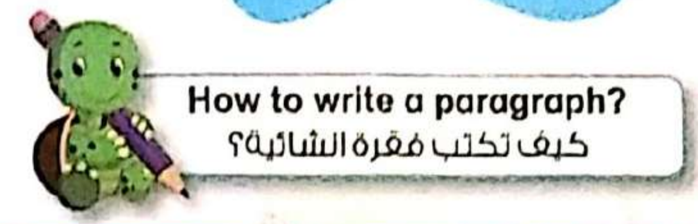
Examples:

1- Yes, I am. / No, I am not. (بعد Yes, / No,)
2- I have a pen, a pencil and a book in my bag. (للفصل بين مجموعة كلمات فى قائمة)
3- Study hard, Omar. / Omar, study hard. (اسم مخاطب)
4- Help me, please. / Please, help me. (كلمة Please)



Examples:

1. I visited the Red Sea. (جملة خبرية)
2. Write your homework. (جملة أمرية)
3. How old are you? (جملة استفهامية)
4. Hi! Hoda. (علامة تعجب)



كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (paragraph)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة ثلاثون (٣٠) كلمة عن موضوع من موضوعات كتاب المدرسة ويعطى للتلاميذ عنصرين مساعدين قد يكونوا عبارتين أو سؤالين أو ملف حقائق لذلك نقدم شرح لكيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال:

• حتى تكّون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن نتعلم مكونات الجملة وترتيبها فى اللغة الإنجليزية حيث تتكون من:

أولا ترتيب الجملة

فاعل			فعل		تكلمة الجملة
اسم شخص	مكان	شيء	مضارع بسيط / مستمر	ماضى بسيط / مستمر	ظرف زمان - مكان / صفة / حال
Ahmed	School	Car	is going / go / goes	was doing / did	home / yesterday happy / well

ثانيا صيغ الجمل المختلفة

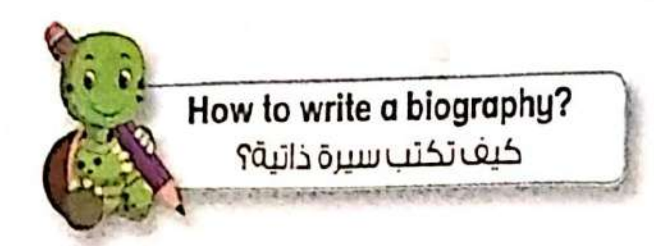
- فاعل + verb to be + صفة ⇛ She is fine.
- فاعل + verb to be + وظيفة ⇛ Samy is a vet.
- فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + مكان ⇛ He went to the park.
- فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + زمن ⇛ We are open on Friday.
- فاعل + فعل + مفعول ⇛ I help her.
- فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + الساعة ⇛ I wake up at 9 o'clock.

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:
أكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٣٠ كلمة باستخدام العناصر المرشدة:

My new house

Guiding words
moved to - bigger

My father had a new job, so we moved to a new house. It's close to his work. The new house is bigger than our old house. I like living here.



كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (Biography)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة ثلاثون ٣٠ كلمة عن سيرة ذاتية عن شخصية مشهورة قد تكون رياضية أو علمية أو سياسية بالاستعانة بالعنصرين المساعدين:

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٣٠ كلمة باستخدام العناصر المرشدة:

Mohamed Salah

Guiding questions

1- Where was he born?
2- Why is he a famous player?

Mohamed Salah is a famous Egyptian football player around the world. He was born in Gharbia governorate in 1992. He scores many goals in his team. I like him very much.

Tips to answer the comprehension questions

إرشادات للإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم

أولاً: أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد (multiple-choice)

1. قد يطلب منك تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية (main idea) فى النص من خلال صيغ مثل:

- The main idea of the passage is..................
- The passage is mainly about...................

وعليك أن تختار الإجابة الصحيحة من أربعة اختيارات تُعطى لك.

كيف تجد الفكرة الرئيسية فى النص

- هى النقطة الأساسية التى يكرر الكاتب الحديث عنها.
- تكون جملة وليست سؤالا.
- الجمل الأخرى فى النص تعطى تفاصيل ومعلومات عنها.
- غالباً تكون فى أول جملة أو آخر جملة فى النص.

لاحظ المثال الآتى

- ما باللون الأحمر هى الفكرة الرئيسية وما باللون الأزرق هى التفاصيل عنها.

Yesterday, I got a new coat. My new coat is blue and red. My coat is very nice and keeps me warm. On the back, there is a picture of a snow man. I will wear my coat to school.

2. قد يقوم واضع الامتحان بإضافة خط تحت أحد الكلمات فى جملة معينة فى القطعة ثم تجد سؤال اختيار من متعدد يقول : الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى ....

- The underlined word '.......' refers to ....

ثانيًا: أسئلة (open-ended) استفهامية

3. قد يطلب واضع الامتحان منك تلخيصاً (summarize) لأحد الفقرات فى النص فى جملة واحدة بالصيغة الآتية:

- Summarize the first / second / third paragraph (into one sentence).

كيف تلخص فقرة إلى جملة أو اكثر

١- حدد اسم الشخص او الشئ او الحيوان الاساسى بالفقرة المطلوب تلخيصها

٢- حدد اهم شئ يخص ذلك الشخص أو الشئ او الحيوان واستخدم اهم الافعال بالفقرة للتعبير عن ذلك وممكن استخدام افعال اخرى تؤدى نفس المعنى.

٣- استبعد الأفكار الفرعية او الغير أساسية او المعلومات الأقل أهمية

٤- أكتب الفكرة الأساسية فى حدود خمسة كلمات أو حسب ما يطلب

أمثلة مجابة

1- Summarize the first paragraph of the text in two lines

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids, temples and other monuments. It is a wonderful visit for them. Tourists also come to see the wonderful natural world such as the desert and the Red Sea.

تتبع الخطوات السابقة:

١- الفقرة تتعلق بشكل اساسي بالسائحين tourists

٢- اهم ما يخصهم هو زيارة مصر والأماكن السياحية بها والأفعال التي تعبر عن ذلك come / see / visit

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤- قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة

Summary

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids and the wonderful natural world such as the Red Sea.

2- Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence of your own words.

My father enjoys playing football with his friends. He believes in doing sports and teaches us the same. He wants me to be clever at school. I want to make him feel proud of me one day.

١- اهم شخص My father

٢- واهم شئ يخصه أنه يؤمن بممارسة الرياضة ويريدني أن أتفوق في دراستي.

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤ - قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة.

Summary

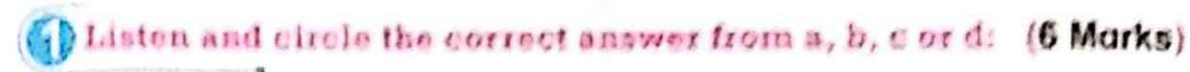
My father thinks that doing sports is very important and he wants me to be clever at school.

Specifications for Fifth Year Primary

مواصفات الصف الخامس الابتدائي ٢٠٢٣ - ٢٠٢٤

Marks: 30 | Time: One hour and a half

A- Listening (6 Marks)



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (6 Marks)

A text about **FIFTY (50)** words related to the Set Books is provided. Learners are asked to listen to the text and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. **(One mark and a half each)**

B- Reading (14 Marks)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 Marks)

FOUR (4) MCQs related to vocabulary based on the Set Books are provided.

Learners are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given.

(One mark each)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4 Marks)

An unseen text from **FIFTY (50)** to **SIXTY (60)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **FIVE (5)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE** of the **FIVE (5)** words given.

The first sentence should be written in full. **(One mark each)**

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6 Marks)

An unseen literary or informational text from **EIGHTY (80) to NINETY (90)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for primary **FIVE**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. TWO (2) MCQs with **FOUR (4)** options; each dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

(One mark each)



B: TWO (2) open ended questions dealing with TWO (2) of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

(Two marks each)

C- Writing (10 Marks)



5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2 Marks)

TWO (2) scrambled statements (sentences and questions) with **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Learners are asked to order the words to form correct sentences. **(One mark each)**

6 Read and write the correct form of the words(s) between brackets: (2 Marks)

TWO (2) structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets. **(One mark each)**

7 Punctuate the following: (One mark)

ONE (1) simple statement (sentence **OR** question) of about **SIX (6)** words with **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks each is provided (**Capital Letter / Full Stop / Question Mark / Exclamation Mark / Comma**). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly. **(Half a mark each)**

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (5 Marks)

Learners are asked to write not less than **THIRTY (30)** words related to a specific topic using **TWO (2)** given guiding elements that can be phrases, questions, fact file, tables.....etc. in **ONE (1)** of the following writing forms:

- Paragraph - Biography

(One mark for relevance of ideas – One mark for vocabulary- One mark for grammar- One mark for spelling- One mark for punctuation)



طريقة شرح السؤال السادس فى ورقة الامتحان

6 Read and write the correct form of the words(s) between brackets:

- اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس.
- يطلب من الطالب تصحيح الكلمة من بين القوسين حسب القواعد اللغوية التى درسها.
- يعطى للطالب جملتين للتدريب على القواعد اللغوية التى درسها ويكتب الطالب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة من بين القوسين.

6 Read and write the correct form of the words(s) between brackets:

1. He is .... **(is)** very frightened yesterday.

   He **was** very frightened yesterday.

2. She didn't .... **(went)** to the park.

   She didn't **go** to the park.

3. The baby is crying. He is .... **(happy)**.

   The baby is crying. He is **unhappy**.

4. Can you .... **(reading)** a story?

   Can you **read** a story?

5. How do you .... **(feeling)**?

   How do you **feel**?

6. I like .... **(play)** sports.

   I like **playing** sports.

7. What do you do .... **(in)** Saturdays?

   What do you do **on** Saturdays?

8. Last week, my parents .... **(buys)** a new apartment.

   Last week, my parents **bought** a new apartment.





My society

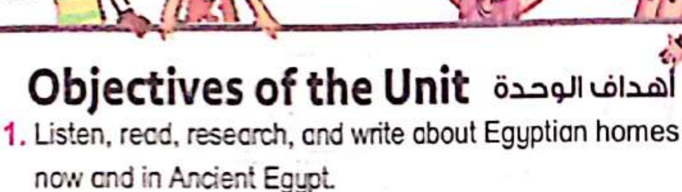
Unit 7

Homes in Egypt

المنازل في مصر







Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about Egyptian homes now and in Ancient Egypt.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن المنازل المصرية الآن وفي مصر القديمة.

2. Talk about the home and furniture. - يتحدث الطالب عن المنزل والأثاث.
3. Read, understand, and listen to a short dialog about different homes. - يقرأ الطالب ويفهم ويستمع إلى حوار قصير حول منازل مختلفة.
4. Understand and use the simple past to talk about past events.

- يفهم الطالب ويستخدم الماضي البسيط للحديث عن الأحداث الماضية.

5. Learn how to say double vowels.

- يتعلم الطالب كيفية نطق الحروف المتحركة المضاعفة.

6. Write a simple blog about an unusual home.

- يكتب الطالب مدونة بسيطة عن منزل غريب.

7. Research and make a presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home.

- يعمل الطالب بحث ويقدم عرض تقديمي عن منزل مصري قديم (في مصر القديمة).







The Home

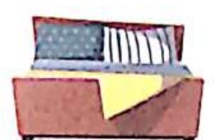




استمع إلى المفردات:



armchair
كرسى ذو مسندين



bed
سرير



cushion
وسادة



closet
دولاب / خزانة



elevator مصعد





oven فرن



shower دش



television تليفزيون



living room	حجرة المعيشة
kitchen	مطبخ
balcony	بلكونة / شرفة
bedroom	حجرة النوم
bathroom	حمام



old	قديم
new	جديد
modern	حديث
bigger	أكبر
closer	أقرب
fantastic	رائع
easier	أسهل
traditional	تقليدى
great	رائع
lovely	جميل

Help your child learn about things at home. ساعد طفلك يتعلم عن الاشياء بالمنزل.





Unit 7 Homes in Egypt

Other words كلمات أخرى

apartment	شقة	was born	وُلد
town	مدينة صغيرة	Thanks	اشكرك
How long?	كم المدة؟	space	مساحة
since	منذ	gift	هدية
parents	الوالدين	view	منظر
job	وظيفة	What about?	ماذا عن؟

Phrases and Prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

welcome to	مرحبًا	as you can see	مثلما ترى
share a room with	يشارك غرفة مع	what a great view	يا له من منظر رائع



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
live	يعيش	lived
move to	ينتقل إلى (يعزل)	moved to
cook	يطبخ	cooked
share	يشارك	shared
prefer	يفضل	preferred

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
come in	يدخل	came in
have to	يجب أن	had to
see	يرى	saw

Study the following

1. Welcome to my new apartment! - مرحبا بكم في شقتي الجديدة!
2. Do you like living here? - هل تحب العيش هنا؟
3. How long did you live in your old apartment? - كم المدة التى عشتها في شقتك القديمة؟
4. We moved to a closer apartment. - انتقلنا إلى شقة اقرب.
5. What's better about this new apartment? - ما الشئ الافضل في هذه الشقة الجديدة؟
6. My mom says it's much easier to cook in.
   - تقول أمي أن الطهى اسهل بكثير (بداخل المطبخ).
7. There's more space so we can have a bigger television.
   - هناك مساحة أكبر لذلك يمكننا امتلاك تلفاز أكبر.

8. They were a gift from Grandma. - كانوا (الوسادات) هدية من الجدة.
9. I share a room with my sister. - اشارك غرفة مع أختي.
10. The balcony is fantastic too - what a great view! - الشرفة رائعة أيضًا - يا له من منظر رائع!
11. Where do you live? - أين تسكن (تعيش)؟
12. Do you live in a house or an apartment? - هل تعيش فى منزل ام شقة؟

1 Work with a partner. Discuss: اعمل مع زميلك وناقش الاتى:

1- Where do you live? Do you live in a house or an apartment?

2- Describe your house or apartment. Is it big or small? Is it modern or old?

3- Say if you like your house or apartment.

----

2 Look and write: انظر واكتب:

armchair - balcony - cushion - closet - elevator - oven - shower - television

1. elevator
2. ----------
3. ----------
4. ----------
5. ----------
6. ----------
7. ----------
8. ----------

3 Complete the mindmap : اكمل الخريطة الذهنية:

اكتب الأشياء الآتية عند الحجرة المناسبة لها.

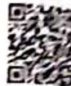
armchair - bed - cushion - closet - oven - shower - television - cushion

Rooms in an apartment

- Living room: ---------- / ---------- / ----------
- Bedroom: closet / ---------- / ----------
- Kitchen: ----------
- Bathroom: ----------

4 Listen and read. Why is Fareeda happy?

استمع واقرأ. لماذا فريدة سعيدة؟



استمع إلى النص: Tapescript نص الاستماع



Fareeda: Hi Dina, welcome to my new apartment! Come in!

Dina : Thanks! Do you like living here?

Fareeda: I love it! It's a great apartment! I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment.

Dina : How long did you live in your old apartment?

Fareeda: Twelve years, since I was born. Then my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment.

Dina : So, what's better about this new apartment?

Fareeda: Come and see. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. My mom says it's much easier to cook in.

Dina : Very nice. And this is the living room?

Fareeda: Yes, as you can see, there's more space so we can have a bigger television. Look at these traditional cushions. They were a gift from Grandma.

Dina : Oh, yes! What about the bedrooms?

Fareeda: We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Amira, but our bedroom is really big. And we have two bathrooms.

Dina : It's lovely! The balcony is fantastic too - what a great view!

5 Listen again. Number the rooms in the order you hear them:

استمع مرة اخرى ورقم الغرف بالترتيب الذى تسمعه فى النص:

bedrooms.......... kitchen ...1..... balcony .... bathrooms .... living room ....

6 Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false sentences in your notebook:

حدد ما اذا كانت الجمل صحيحة او خطأ ثم صحح الجمل الخطأ فى كراستك:

1- Fareeda prefers her old apartment. ☐

2- Fareeda's family lived in the old apartment for 12 years. ☐

3- Fareeda has her own bedroom in the new apartment. ☐

4- Dina likes the new apartment. ☐



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Fatma lives in a modern ....

   a street   b city   c apartment   d house

2. Fatma has three .... in the living room.

   a closets   b showers   c cushion   d armchairs

3. Fatma bakes bread in the ....

   a oven   b closet   c cushion   d elevator

4. The .... is next to the bedroom in Fatma's apartment.

   a balcony   b living room   c kitchen   d bathroom

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I can see a great view from our ....

   a shower   b oven   c balcony   d closet

2. My sister can sleep on her small ....

   a elevator   b cushion   c television   d oven

3. Dina .... a room with her younger sister.

   a shares   b comes   c cooks   d moves

4. In the evening. I watched a film on ....

   a shower   b armchair   c television   d elevator

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

(القليوبية - الخانكة ٢٠٢٣)

My name is Mona. I moved to a new apartment last week. I love this new apartment. It is much bigger than our old apartment. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. It's much easier to cook in. The living room is bigger than the old one so we can have a bigger television. We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Dalia, but our bedroom is really big. I like our apartment.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mona moved to a new ....

   a school   b class   c apartment   d city

2. We cook food in the ....

a apartment   b bedroom   c television   d oven

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How many bedrooms are there in the new apartment?

----

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

----

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. do - live - Where - you?

----

2. balcony - is - The - too - fantastic.

----

3. moved - apartment - to - a closer - We.

----

4. were - a - from - They - Grandma - gift.

----

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

what about the bedrooms

----

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٣٠ كلمة عن:

Your new apartment

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Guiding questions

1- When did you move to your new apartment?
2- How is your new apartment?





My perfect room




استمع إلى المفردات:

Adjectives & opposites  الصفات وعكسها

friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
lucky	محظوظ	unlucky	غير محظوظ
safe	آمن	unsafe	غير آمن
happy	سعيد	unhappy	غير سعيد
fair	عادل	unfair	غير عادل

Prepositions of place  حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

on the right	على اليمين
on the left	على اليسار
on the wall	على الحائط/ الجدار
in the middle of the room	فى منتصف الحجرة
next to	بجوار

In the Jungle  فى الغابة

howler monkey	قرد العواء (سعدان العواء)
a local villager	احد سكان القرية المحليين
deep	عميق / بعيد فى عمق....
path	طريق

Other words  كلمات أخرى

perfect	رائع / مثالى
poster	ملصق
dark	مظلم
alone	وحيد
make friends	يكون صداقات
scientist	عالم
frightening	مرعب/ مخيف
interested in	مهتم بـ
do some research	يقوم بعمل بعض الابحاث
nearby / close	قريب
jungle	غابة
heavy rain	مطر غزير
go forward	يذهب للامام
go back toward	يذهب للخلف تجاه
suddenly	فجأه
indeed	بالفعل
on holiday	فى اجازة
sculpture	تمثال
cases	حقائب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

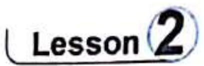
Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
die	يموت	died
miss	يفتقد / يفوت	missed
smile	يبتسم	smiled
try	يحاول	tried
visit	يزور	visited
love	يحب	loved
look up	ينظر لأعلى	looked up
shout	يصرخ	shouted
carry	يحمل	carried
create	ينشئ	created

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
sit	يجلس	sat
eat	يأكل	ate
leave	يغادر	left
go	يذهب	went
meet	يقابل	met
tell	يخبر	told
set out	يبدأ رحلة	set out
know	يعرف	knew
wear	يرتدي	wore
come	يأتي	came

Definitions تعريفات

unfriendly غير ودود	not kind to someone
uncomfortable غير مريح	something that doesn't feel nice to sit on or wear on your body
unlucky غير محظوظ	something bad happens to you without a reason
unsafe غير آمن	dangerous
unhappy غير سعيد	sad
unfair غير عادل	something that happens that isn't morally right or fair



Study the following

1. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it.

- على اليمين يوجد سريري وبجانبه مكتب.

2. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

- على الحائط يوجد الكثير من الملصقات الخاصة بالحيوانات.

3. My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. - عمي عالم وهو يحب الحيوانات.

4. The people were very friendly and helped him with his work.

- كان الناس ودودين للغاية وساعدوه في عمله.

5. He was very interested in howler monkeys. - كان مهتمًا جدًا بقرود العواء.

6. He knew he was very close to them. - كان يعلم أنه قريب جدًا منهم.

7. It was very heavy rain. - كان هناك أمطار غزيرة جدا.

8. There was water everywhere and he couldn't see the path to go forward or back. - كان هناك ماء في كل مكان ولم يستطع رؤية الطريق للمضي قدمًا أو للخلف.

9. Suddenly, lots of water came toward him. - فجأة جاء الكثير من الماء نحوه.

10. He was very frightened. - كان خائفا جدا.

11. My uncle was very happy indeed! - كان عمي سعيدا جدا حقا!

12. He's very unlucky because he misses the bus.

- إنه غير محظوظ للغاية لأنه لم يلحق الاتوبيس.

13. She's very unhappy- she never smiles or tries to make friends.

- إنها غير سعيدة للغاية – فهي لا تبتسم أبدًا أو تحاول تكوين صداقات.

14. She created a fantastic sculpture from the garbage.

- صنعت تمثالاً رائعًا من القمامة.

15. We carried our heavy cases to the car. - حملنا حقائبنا الثقيلة إلى السيارة.



Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 The past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط

- للتعبير عن حدث تم فى الماضى وانتهى.
- للتعبير عن فعل حدث مرة واحدة فى الماضى أو فعل حدث عدة مرات فى الماضى أو حدث كان حقيقة لفترة من الوقت فى الماضى.

- I visited her house when I was five.
- We went to my aunt's house at the beach every summer.

- يتكون زمن الماضى البسيط من:

.باقى الجملة + فعل فى التصريف الثانى + فاعل (كل الضمائر)

- I met her in Zagazig two years ago.

- تنقسم الافعال إلى أفعال منتظمة وأفعال غير منتظمة:

اولا : الافعال المنتظمة : هى الافعال التى نضيف اليها (ed) فى الماضى:

want → wanted	help → helped

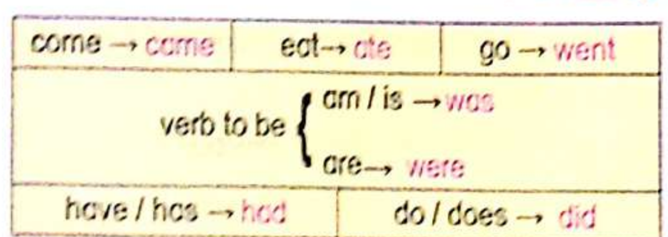
- إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (e) نضيف اليه (d) فقط فى الماضى:

die → died	like → liked

- وإذا انتهى بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ied):

study → studied	carry → carried

ثانيا : الافعال غير المنتظمة : وهى الافعال التى لا يضاف اليها (ed) فى الماضى:



come → came	eat → ate	go → went
verb to be { am / is → was, are → were		
have / has → had	do / does → did	

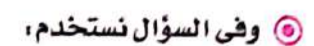
2 Negative النفى

- لنفى الفعل فى الماضى البسيط نستخدم:

مصدر الفعل inf. + didn't + فاعل

فعل فى التصريف الثانى + never + فاعل

- He didn't go to the park.
- He never went to the park.




3 Question السؤال

وفى السؤال نستخدم:

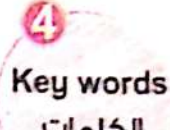
? مصدر الفعل .inf + فاعل + did + كلمة استفهام

- When did people start to live in Egypt?

أو ممكن ان نبدا السؤال بـ Did وتكون الاجابة No, or Yes,

- Did they write the homework?
- Yes, they did. اجابة مثبتة   No, they didn't. اجابة في النفى

4 Key words الكلمات الدالة



yesterday – last (week – month – year) – once – in the past – ago – in ancient times – in + year (in 2020)

The prefix (un-) البادئة (un-)

هناك بعض المقاطع التى تسمى بادئات والتى يمكن اضافتها اول بعض الكلمات حيث تغير المعنى مثال البادئة (-un) والتى تعطى النفى من الكلمة:

happy → unhappy	safe → unsafe

لاحظ:

- unhappy = not happy   uncomfortable = not comfortable
- He looks unhappy. = He doesn't look happy.
- The armchair is very uncomfortable. =The armchair isn't comfortable.

1 Read about the bedroom : اقرا عن غرفة النوم:

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.



2 Match the words to their meanings: صل الكلمات بمعانيها،

1 unfriendly	a. sad
2 uncomfortable	b. dangerous
3 unlucky	c. something that doesn't feel nice to sit on or wear on your body
4 unsafe	d. something that happens that isn't morally right or fair
5 unhappy	e. something bad happens to you without a reason
6 unfair	f. not kind to someone

3 Complete the sentences with the words in Exercise 2:

اكمل الجمل بكلمات من التمرين السابق،

1- His cat died last week. He was very ....

2- I never sit in that green armchair - it's very ....

3- Don't go down the street in the dark alone - it's very ....

4- That's very .... - you ate everything and didn't leave any for us!

5- He's very .... because he missed the bus.

6- She's very .... - she never smiles or tries to make friends.

4 Underline the past simple verbs in the text. Mark the regular verbs (R) and the irregular verbs (I):

ضع خط تحت الافعال التى فى الماضى البسيط فى النص. اكتب (R) عند الافعال المنتظمة واكتب (I) عند الافعال غير المنتظمة:



استمع إلى النص:

My uncle is a scientist(1) and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America(2) for work. He loved it there because the people were very friendly(3) and helped him with his work. Then, about three years ago, something frightening(4) happened to him and he was lucky(5) he lived to tell me about it! He was very interested in(6) howler monkeys(7) and wanted to do some research into their family groups. A local villager(8) told him where there was a howler monkey family nearby and he was very happy. But the villager also said, "Tomorrow, we are going to have a lot of rain so it could be unsafe(9)."

My uncle set out to look for the howler monkey family and soon he was deep in the jungle. He could hear the monkeys and he looked up. He knew he was very close to(10) them. Then the rain started. It was very heavy rain(11). Soon, there was water everywhere and he couldn't see the path(12) to go forward or back.

Suddenly, lots of water came toward him and carried him away down to the river. He was very frightened. Suddenly, he saw a hand and someone was shouting. It was the villager. He took Uncle's hand and said, "Now you are safe!" My uncle was very happy indeed(13)!

Arabic Meaning

١- عالم
٢- امريكا الجنوبية
٣- ودودين
٤- مخيف/مرعب
٥- محظوظ
٦- مهتم بـ
٧- قرود العواء
٨- احد سكان القرية المحليين
٩- غير امن
١٠- قريب لـ
١١- مطر غزير
١٢- طريق
١٣- بالفعل


Howler monkeys in the jungle

5 Complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets in the past simple:

اكمل الجمل باستخدام الافعال التى بين الاقواس بصيغة الماضى البسيط:

1- When we went to Sharm El-Sheikh on holiday, we .... (meet) some new friends.
2- She .... (create) a fantastic sculpture from the garbage.
3- We .... (carry) our heavy cases to the car.
4- His grandma .... (go) to Aswan last year.
5- Yesterday, my cousin .... (come) to visit us.

6 Make the sentences negative:

كون النفى من الجمل:

1- He traveled all over Egypt. He didn't travel all over Egypt.
2- He ate Om Ali in Tanta. ....
3- It rained yesterday. ....
4- They came here by airplane. ....



Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The opposite of safe is ....

a unhappy b dangerous c unfair d unlucky

2. Don't sleep on this bed, it's very ....

a comfortable b uncomfortable c fair d unfriendly

3. It was very heavy ...., the ground was very wet.

a sky b rain c sun d path

4. On the ...., there is a closet.

a night b right c write d light

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

move - better - closet - left - share

In my new apartment, I have a big bedroom. It's much ① .... than my old bedroom. I ② .... it with my sister. There are two beds. My sister's bed is on the ③ .... On the wall, there's a clock. There's a brown ④ .... next to the armchair.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Amr went to the zoo yesterday. He went with his family. They saw a lot of animals. They saw the howler monkeys, lions and elephants. I tried to feed the animals. Mom told me it was unsafe to do this. Some children were **unfriendly** to the animals so dad was angry. He told them to stop hurting the animals. My sister was frightened when she saw the lion. We had lunch at the zoo. It was a nice day.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**unfriendly**" means ....

a sad b dangerous c not kind d lucky

2. The text is mainly about visiting the ....

a school b zoo c park d desert

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why was dad angry? --

4. What did Amr try to do? --

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The baby is crying. He is .... (happy).
2. .... (Do) you visit your grandparents yesterday?
3. There was water everywhere, we .... (don't) go outside.
4. I .... (meet) her in Cairo two years ago.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. Egypt – traveled - He - all - over. --
2. are - lots - of - posters - There - of animals. --
3. grandma - year - Aswan - went - to - last - His. --
4. uncle - loves - is - a scientist - My - and - animals. --

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- i met Miss manar yesterday. --

7 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

In the jungle

Guiding phrases

saw howler monkeys - unsafe to go



LESSON 3

Ancient Egyptian Homes




استمع إلى المفردات:

mud bricks	الطوب اللبن (طوب من الطين)	pot	إناء
roof	سطح المنزل	oven	فرن
reed mat	حصيرة من البوص	sleeping area	منطقة النوم
gate	بوابة		



Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	the same	نفس الشيء
the Nile	نهر النيل	outside	خارج
drinking	الشرب	crops	محاصيل
cooking	الطبخ	wooden box	صندوق خشبى
washing	الغسيل/الغُسل	floor	طابق / دور فى مبنى
strong	قوى	the countryside	الريف
cool	بارد (جو لطيف)	chicken	دجاجة
flat	مسطح / مستو	banks of the river	ضفاف النهر
hot nights	ليالى حاره	by	بجوار
furniture	اثاث	special style	نمط خاص
different from	مختلف عن	wind	رياح
papyrus	البردى	all right	بخير
insects	حشرات	near	قريب من - بالقرب من

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
use	يستخدم	used
paint	يطلى / يدهن	painted
cook	يطبخ / يطهو	cooked
relax	يسترخى	relaxed
cover	يغطى	covered
save	يوفر / يدخر	saved
join	يربط	joined
store	يخزن	stored

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
make	يجعل / يصنع	made
keep	يحافظ على / يربى	kept
have	يملك	had
sleep	ينام	slept
build	يبنى	built
grow	ينمو / يزرع	grew
blow	يهب (للرياح)	blew
feel	يشعر	felt
fall	يسقط	fell

Study the following

1. In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile.
   - في مصر القديمة بنى الكثير من الناس منازلهم بالقرب من النيل.
2. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing.
   - استخدموا مياه النيل للشرب والطبخ والغسيل.
3. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses.
   - كما استخدموا طين من النهر لصنع الطوب لمنازلهم.
4. The mud bricks made very strong walls. - صنع الطوب اللبن جدرانًا (حوائط) قوية جدًا.
5. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool.
   - أراد المصريون القدماء الحفاظ على برودة منازلهم.
6. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler.
   - قام بعض الناس أيضًا بطلاء منازلهم باللون الأبيض لجعلها أكثر برودة.
7. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house.
   - كانت جميع المنازل المصرية القديمة ذات أسطح مستوية ، والتي كانت اكثر جزء بارد فى المنزل.

8 The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today.

- كان الأثاث في المنازل المصرية القديمة مختلفًا تمامًا عن وقتنا الحالى.

9 There were reed mats to sit and sleep on.

- كانت هناك حصائر من البوص للجلوس والنوم عليها.

10 They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors.

- استخدموا ورق البردي لتغطية النوافذ والأبواب.

11 In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes.

- في كل منزل ، كان هناك أواني وسلال كبيرة لتخزين المحاصيل وصناديق خشبية للملابس.

12 Not many people had beds or chairs. - لم يكن لدى الكثير من الناس أسرة أو كراسي.

13 They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

- كانوا يزرعون الخضار ويربون الدجاج هناك.

1 Work with a partner. Discuss: اعمل مع زميلك وناقش:

1- What do you think Ancient Egyptian homes were like?- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

2- Where did people build their homes in Ancient Egypt?- - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

3- What did people use to build their homes?- -

2 Read the passage. Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false ones in your notebook:

اقرأ النص. حدد ما اذا كانت الجمل صحيحة أو خطأ ثم صحح الجمل الخطأ فى كراستك:


استمع إلى النص:

In Ancient Egypt[1], many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks[2] made very strong walls.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep[3] their homes cool[4]. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs[5], which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed[6], and slept there on hot nights.

The furniture[7] in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today.

Arabic Meaning

١- مصر القديمة
٢- الطوب اللبن
٣- يحافظ على
٤- بارد
٥- اسطح مستوية
٦- استرخوا
٧- أثاث

There were reed mats[8] to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus[9] to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing[10] crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

٨- حصير من البوص
٩- البردي
١٠- تخزين
١١- طابقان/دوران
١٢- مساحة

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors[11]. This saved space[12] so they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

1- A lot of people made their homes near the Nile.

2- In Ancient Egypt, people used water from the Red Sea for drinking.

3- The mud bricks helped Ancient Egyptians to keep their homes cool.

4- The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes wasn't the same as today.

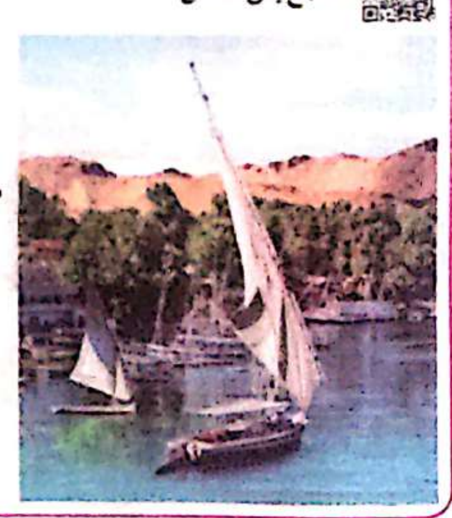
5- The Ancient Egyptians stored their clothes in metal boxes.

6- The houses in cities usually had one floor only.

3 Read and listen to the poem: اقرأ واستمع الى القصيدة:

استمع إلى النص:

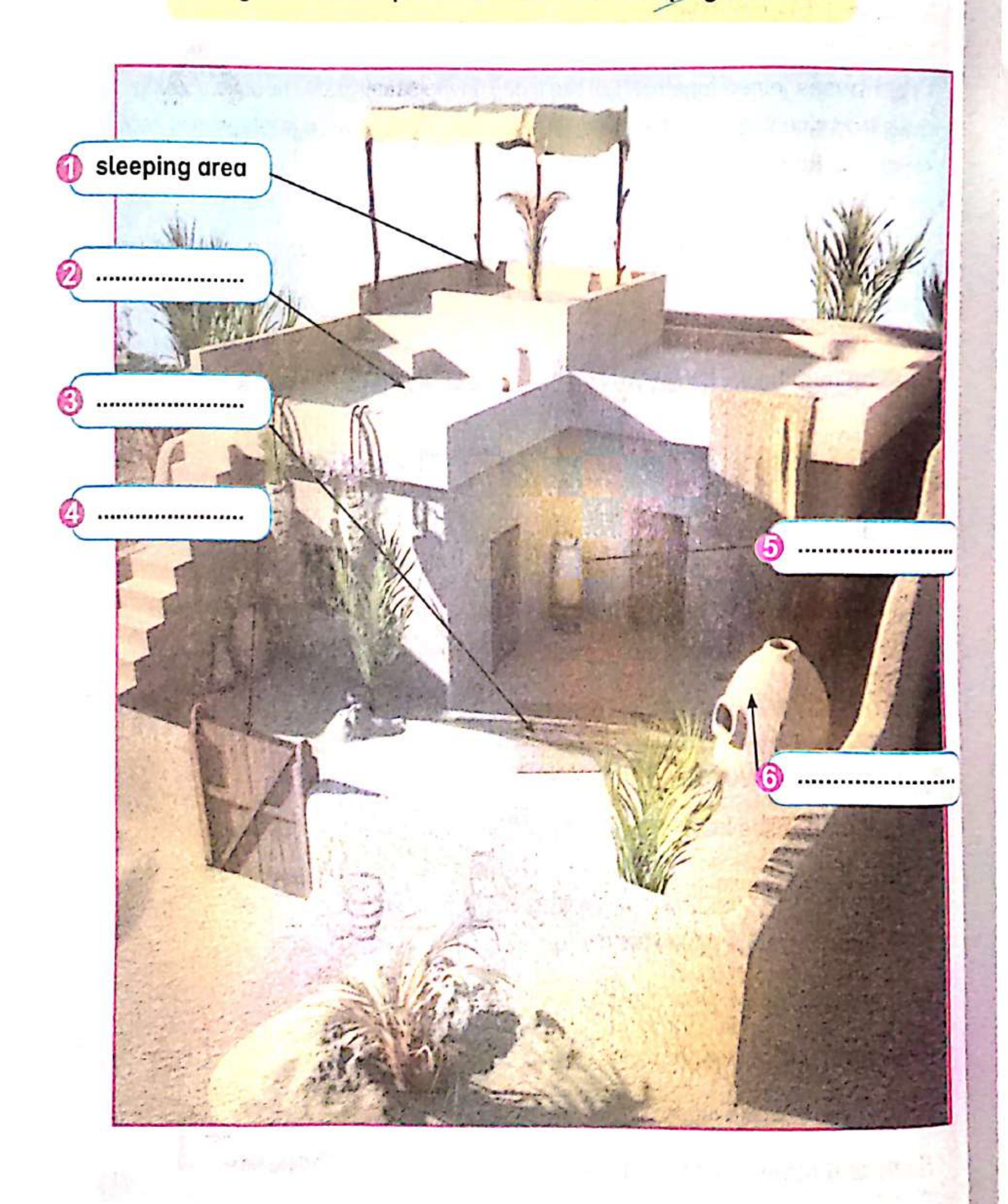
By the banks of the ancient River Nile,
Egyptian houses had a special style:
Dark inside with small windows,
Reed mats on the roof where the cool wind blows,
Outside under the stars at night,
One family together, feeling all right.
Mud from the Nile made their walls
Safe and strong, and never to fall.

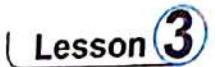


4 Listen and write the labels on the ancient Egyptian house:

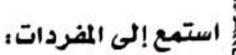
استمع واكتب الاشياء داخل المنزل المصرى القديم:

gate - oven - pot - roof - reed mat - sleeping area











(ee) / i: / words

tree شجرة
sheep خروف
seed بذرة
queen ملكة

(oo) /uː/ words

spoon ملعقة
roof سطح
pool حمام سباحة
school مدرسة
tool اداة
food طعام
zoo حديقة الحيوان
smooth ناعم / املس
noon فترة الظهيرة

(oo) /ʊ/ words

wood خشب
book كتاب
cook يطبخ / طباخ
good جيد
wool صوف

(oo) /ʌ/ words

blood دم
flood فيضان

Unit 7 Homes in Egypt

ندرس فى هذا الدرس نطق الحروف المتحركة المضاعفة (oo) / (ee) فى بعض الكلمات:

- حيث ينطق حرفى (ee) مثل نطق صوت (e) الممتد / long e / i: لكن حرفى (oo) ممكن ان ينطقا بثلاث طرق كما يلى:

١- مثل صوت (o) ممتد النطق long o مثل الرمز الصوتى /uː/ كما فى الكلمات: - roof - spoon
school - pool

٢- مثل الرمز الصوتى /ʊ/ كما فى الكلمات: wood - book - cook

٣- مثل الرمز الصوتى /ʌ/ كما فى الكلمات: flood - blood

1 Write the double vowel words with ee or oo:

اكتب الحروف المتحركة المضاعفة ee أو oo:



1. tr_ee_
2. sp______
3. sh______
4. r______
5. s______
6. s______
7. q______
8. p______

2 Listen and write the words you hear. Then listen again and repeat:

استمع واكتب الكلمات التى تسمعها. ثم استمع مرة اخرى وردد:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

استمع إلى النص:










1. wood
2. ______
3. ______
4. ______
5. ______
6. ______

3 Read. Put the oo words in the correct column in the table. Then listen and check:

اقرأ وضع الكلمات التى تحتوى على (oo) فى العمود الصحيح فى الجدول ثم استمع وتأكد:

school - book - flood - smooth - cook - blood - food - zoo - wood - wool - noon - spoon - pool - good

/uː/	/ʊ/	/ʌ/
school	book	flood
______	______	______
______	______	______



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Ancient Egyptians used the .... to travel from one place to another.

   a papyrus b Nile c bricks d roofs

2. Ancient Egyptians used .... bricks to build their houses.

   a sand b mud c sea d milk

3. The roofs were the .... part in the house.

   a hottest b smallest c oldest d coolest

4. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to .... windows and doors.

   a build b cover c keep d clean

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

storing - bricks - near - painted - relaxed

The Ancient Egyptians were great people and builders, too. Their homes were 1 .... the Nile. They used mud 2 .... to make the walls strong. They 3 .... their houses white to make them cooler. They used large pots and baskets for 4 .... crops and wooden boxes for clothes.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. had - two - in cities - floors - The houses.

   ....

2. many - people - beds - had - Not - or chairs.

   ....

3. their - homes - did - people - What - use - to build?

   ....

4. did - build - their - Where - homes - people?

----

5. painted - their - People - white - homes.

----

6. grew - chickens - and - They - kept - vegetables.

----

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The furniture in Ancient Egyptian .... (is) very different from today.
2. Many years ago, mud bricks .... (make) very strong walls.
3. The Ancient Egyptians .... (store) their clothes in metal boxes in the past.
4. What .... (do) Ancient Egyptians use to store their crops in the the past?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

Ancient egyptians kept their homes cool

----

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Homes in Ancient Egypt

Guiding phrases

keep their homes cool - had flat roofs



Lesson 4 ★ Writing



Key vocabulary

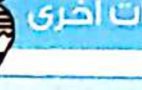


استمع إلى المفردات:

unusual homes	منازل غريبة
blogging	التدوين فى مدونة
ecological	بيئى / صديق للبيئة
farmhouse	منزل ريفى
landscape	منظر طبيعى
awful	فظيع
annoying	مزعج

awesome	رائع
boring	ممل
funny	مضحك
brilliant	رائع
cool	جميل
friendly	ودود
interesting	شيق

Other words كلمات أخرى



week	اسبوع
topic	موضوع
architect	مهندس معمارى
Netherlands	هولندا
online	عبر / على الانترنت
upside down	مقلوب رأسا على عقب
actually	فعليا / بالفعل
modern	حديث

at the top	على القمة / فى اعلى
light	ضوء
local people	اشخاص / سكان محليون
farm	مزرعة
field	حقل
heat	حرارة
energy	طاقة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs افعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
change	يغير	changed
work	يعمل	worked
fit	يلائم/ يناسب	fitted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
write	يكتب	wrote
take	يأخذ	took
find	يجد	found
get	يحصل على	got

Definitions تعريفات

blogging التدوين فى مدونة	to write about something in an online blog
ecological بيئى/صديق للبيئة	related to living thing and their environments

Study the following

1. I like blogging about different things.
- أنا أحب التدوين عن أشياء مختلفة.
2. This week I'm writing about unusual homes.
- أكتب هذا الأسبوع عن منازل غريبة.
3. This topic is very interesting for me.
- هذا الموضوع مثير جدا للاهتمام بالنسبة لي.
4. I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online.
- لقد وجدت هذا المنزل الغريب في هولندا على الإنترنت.
5. It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern.
- إنه في الواقع منزل ريفى قديم يغيره الناس ليجعلوه حديث.
6. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape.
- يحبه السكان المحليون لأنه يتلاءم جيدًا مع المناظر الطبيعية المحلية.
7. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house.
- كما أنه صديق للبيئة لأنه يستخدم الهواء والماء والشمس للتدفئة وتوليد الطاقة للمنزل.
8. What do you think of it?
- ما رأيك في ذلك؟
9. Do you like it?
- هل أحببت ذلك؟

1 Read Dalida's blog and answer her question : اقرأ مدونة داليدا واجب عن سؤالها،

Dalida

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

Wednesday, 8th November

استمع إلى النص،

Unusual homes

Hi! My name's Dalida and I like blogging(1) about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual(2) homes. This topic(3) is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect(4), so she sometimes takes me to see some brilliant places(5). It's really awesome! I found this unusual house in the Netherlands(6) online(7) - it's upside down(8)! It is actually(9) an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light(10). Local people like it because it fits(11) in very well with the local landscape(12), which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological(13) because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool! What do you think of it? Do you like it?

Upside down house in the Netherlands

Arabic Meaning

١-التدوين
٢-غريب
٣-موضوع
٤-مهندس معمارى
٥-اماكن رائعة
٦-هولندا
٧-عبر الانترنت
٨-مقلوب راسا على عقب
٩-فعليا
١٠-ضوء
١١-يلاءم/ يناسب
١٢-منظر طبيعى
١٣-صديق للبيئة



2 Decide if the sentences about Dalida's blog are True (T) or False (F)

حدد إذا كانت الجمل الآتية عن مدونة داليدا صح أو خطأ:

1. The house is in France. [ ]
2. It's in a city. [ ]
3. Dalida visited the house. [ ]
4. It's ecologically friendly. [ ]



Tip! Writing a blog

ارشادات كتابة مدونة على الإنترنت:

1- Write about something you like and enjoy.

2- Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use contractions (I'm, it's) and words like "awesome" and "cool".

3- Use exclamation marks (!) and emojis: 🙂 😠 🙁 😲

4- Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs.

5- Check that your spelling is correct.

3 Using adjectives in a blog makes it interesting. Sort the adjectives into positive and negative adjectives:

يضفي استخدام الصفات تشويقا للمدونة. صنف الصفات إلى ايجابية وسلبية:

awful - annoying - awesome - boring -
funny - brilliant - cool - friendly - interesting

Positive	Negative
funny	awful

4 Write your blog. Find an unusual house or home and write about it. Write 30-40 words:

اكتب مدونتك. أوجد منزلًا أو بيتًا غريب. واكتب عنه من ٣٠ إلى ٤٠ كلمة:

Write:

- where it is and give some information about it.
- what you think about it and why.
- ask the readers about their opinion.





Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Dalia's uncle is a/an ....

   a architect   b farmer   c teacher   d cook

2. Dalia's uncle lives in an old ....

   a houseboat   b apartment   c farmhouse   d town

3. .... were very funny.

   a Chickens   b Goats   c Cows   d Sheep

4. The .... are brilliant.

   a crops   b farmers   c fields   d animals

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

upside - blogging - architect - ecological - found

Yesterday, my teacher asked us to do homework about unusual homes around the world. My mom helped me because she's an (1) .... We (2) .... an old farmhouse in the Netherlands. It's (3) .... down. It's also very (4) .... I liked it very much.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. like - Do - it - you?

....

2. is - also - ecological - very - It.

....

3. think - do - you - What - of - it?

....

4. writing - about - I'm - homes - unusual.

....



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.





5. interesting - is - The topic - for me - very.

- -

6. found - in - the Netherlands - this unusual - I - house.

- -

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This week, I'm ---------- (write) about different things.
2. Do you ---------- (liked) this unusual home?
3. My mom is an architect and she ---------- (take) me to some brilliant places.
4. The windows ---------- (is) on the top.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what do you think of it

- -

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Unusual homes

Guiding questions

1- Where is the unusual home?
2- Why is the home unusual?

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -



Review



At home في المنزل



armchair
كرسى ذو مسندين



bed
سرير



cushion
وسادة



closet
دولاب / خزانة



elevator
مصعد



shower
دش



television
تليفزيون



oven
فرن

mud bricks	الطوب اللبن
roof	سطح المنزل
reed mat	حصيرة من البوص
gate	بوابة
unusual homes	منازل غريبة
blogging	التدوين فى مدونة
ecological	بيئى / صديق للبيئة
farmhouse	منزل ريفى
landscape	منظر طبيعى
awful	فظيع

annoying	مزعج
oven	فرن
sleeping area	منطقة النوم
awesome	رائع
boring	ممل
funny	مضحك
brilliant	رائع
cool	جميل
friendly	ودود
interesting	شيق

In the Jungle في الغابة



howler monkey	قرد العواء
a local villager	احد سكان القرى المحليين

deep	عميق
path	طريق



Adjectives & opposites الصفات وعكسها



friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
lucky	محظوظ	unlucky	غير محظوظ
safe	آمن	unsafe	غير آمن
happy	سعيد	unhappy	غير سعيد
fair	عادل	unfair	غير عادل

Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان



on the right	على اليمين
on the left	على اليسار
on the wall	على الحائط/ الجدار
in the middle of the room	فى منتصف الحجرة
next to	بجوار

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
live	يعيش	lived
move to	ينتقل إلى (يعزل)	moved to
share	يشارك	shared
die	يموت	died
miss	يفتقد / يفوت	missed
smile	يبتسم	smiled
try	يحاول	tried
carry	يحمل	carried
create	ينشئ	created
use	يستخدم	used
cook	يطبخ/ يطهو	cooked
save	يوفر/ يدخر	saved
work	يعمل	worked
fit	يلائم/ يناسب	fitted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
see	يرى	saw
sit	يجلس	sat
eat	يأكل	ate
leave	يغادر	left
meet	يقابل	met
tell	يخبر	told
set out	يبدأ رحلة	set out
keep	يحافظ على/ يربى	kept
sleep	ينام	slept
build	يبنى	built
grow	ينمو/ يزرع	grew
blow	يهب (للرياح)	blew
feel	يشعر	felt
fall	يسقط	fell
write	يكتب	wrote

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط

The past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

◉ للتعبير عن حدث تم فى الماضى وانتهى.

- I visited her house when I was five

◉ يتكون الزمن الماضى البسيط من:

.باقى الجملة + فعل فى التصريف الثانى + فاعل (كل الضمائر)

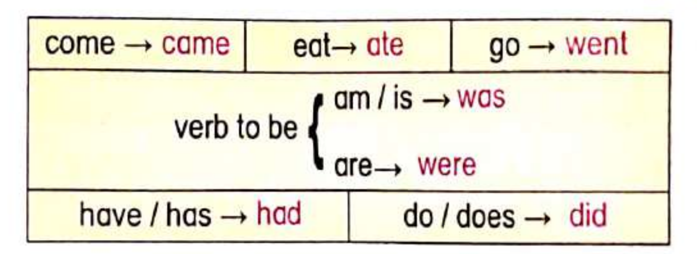
- I met her in Cairo three years ago.

تنقسم الأفعال إلى أفعال منتظمة وأفعال غير منتظمة:

اولا : الافعال المنتظمة : هى الافعال التى نضيف اليها (ed) فى الماضى:

want → wanted	help → helped

ثانيا : الافعال غير المنتظمة : وهى الافعال التى لا يضاف اليها (ed) فى الماضى:



come → came	eat → ate	go → went
verb to be { am / is → was ; are → were }		
have / has → had	do / does → did	

2 Negative النفى

◉ لنفى الفعل فى الماضى البسيط نستخدم:

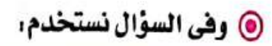
مصدر الفعل .inf + didn't + فاعل

فعل فى التصريف الثانى + never + فاعل

- He didn't go to the park.

- He never went to the park.

3 Question السؤال



◉ وفى السؤال نستخدم:



? مصدر الفعل .inf + فاعل + did + كلمة استفهام

- When did people start to live in Egypt?

◉ أو ممكن ان نبدا السؤال بـ: Did وتكون الاجابة ,No, or Yes:

- Did they write the homework?
- Yes, they did. اجابة مثبتة   No, they didn't. اجابة فى النفى

4 Key words الكلمات الدالة



yesterday – last (week – month – year) – once – in the past – ago – in ancient times – in + year (in 2020)



مهارات الكتابة

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words:

Lesson 1
Your new apartment

1. We moved to a new apartment last week. My father had a new job. He bought a fantastic apartment. There are three bedrooms. There's a big television in the living room. The new kitchen is bigger than the old one. It's easier to cook in.

Lesson 2
In the jungle

2. I went to the jungle with my father yesterday. My father is a scientist. He did some research on howler monkeys. We saw many animals in the jungle. It's unsafe to go to the jungle alone. I enjoyed my day.

Lesson 3
Homes in Ancient Egypt

3. Ancient Egyptians used mud bricks to build their homes. They used mud from the river to make mud bricks. The mud bricks made very strong walls. They helped to keep their homes cool, too. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house.

Lesson 4
Unusual homes

4. I read a book about unusual homes. There was an old farmhouse in the Netherlands. It was upside down. It was very ecological and local people liked it. It was so cool.

activity - unit 7
The furniture in Ancient Egypt

5. The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. They used large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes.

Al-Azhar Exercises



الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع واختر:

1. My uncle is a .... (farmer - teacher - vet)
2. My uncle loves .... (food - animals - insects)
3. He has .... children. (one - four - two)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بالكلمات في الأسفل:

apartment - Twenty - live - long

A : Where do you ❶ ....?

B : I live in an ❷ ....

A : How ❸ .... did you live in your apartment?

B : ❹ .... years, since I was born.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الاسئلة التالية:

Hello, I'm Magdy. I'm 15 years old. My father has a farm. My brother and I play on our farm on the weekends.We have a big house on the farm.There are four rooms in our house. I love my bedroom. I share it with my brother. We are a happy family.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. How old is Magdy?

....

2. What does Magdy's father have?

....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



B - Choose the correct answer:

3. There are .... rooms in our house. (three - four - six)
4. They are a .... family. (nice - sad - happy)
5. Magdy loves his .... (living room - bathroom - bedroom)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I visited his house when I.............................five.
   - a was
   - b am
   - c are
2. .... the left, there is my sister's bed.
   - a In
   - b At
   - c On
3. On the wall , there are lots of .... of animals.
   - a boxes
   - b pens
   - c posters
4. His cat died last week.He was very ....
   - a unhappy
   - b happy
   - c nice
5. I .... her in Cairo two years ago.
   - a meet
   - b met
   - c meets

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. is - My - room - nice - living.

   ----

2. very - topic - interesting - This.

   ----

3. airplane - came - here - They - by.

   ----

4. blogging - different - like - I - things.

   ----

5. big - your - Is - small - or - apartment?





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ahmed lives in a .... house.
   a narrow b small c big d dirty
2. Ahmed shares his bedroom with his ....
   a cousin b sister c brother d parents
3. There's a\an .... next to Ahmed's bed.
   a desk b armchair c cushion d closet
4. There are posters of .... on Ahmed's bedroom.
   a plants b animals c player d fruit

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. There's a balcony in my ....
   a living room b oven c elevator d closet
2. Ancient Egyptians used mud bricks to make homes ....
   a strong b hot c long d weak
3. I like sitting on this armchair. It's very ....
   a comfortable b unfriendly c unlucky d unsafe
4. My uncle is very .... in howler monkeys.
   a unlucky b interested c scared d safe

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

local - howler - scientist - path - frightened

I went with my uncle to the jungle last week. My uncle is a (1) .... and he is interested in animals. He wanted to do research about (2) .... monkeys. The (3) .... villagers helped him, but I was very (4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

There are different types of homes all over the world. Many people live in apartments in big cities. These apartments are in big buildings. The buildings have many floors so people use elevators to go to their apartments. People live in houses in the countryside. The houses have gardens around <u>them</u>. On hot nights people sleep on roofs because it is cooler there. In the desert people sleep in tents.



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about ....

a people b houses c roofs d floors

2. The underlined word "them" refers to ....

a gardens b cities c houses d deserts

Answer the following questions:

3. Why do people use elevators? ------------------------------------

4. What do people do on hot nights? ------------------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. heavy - was - very - rain - It. ------------------------------------
2. homes - did - people - What - use to - build? ------------------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I couldn't wear my new shoes. They were .... (comfortable).
2. Last week, my parents .... (buy) a new apartment.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

do you know about Ancient egyptian homes?

----

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

The furniture in Ancient Egypt

Guiding phrases

reed mats to sit and sleep - large pots for storing crops



My society

Unit 8

At the doctor's

في عيادة الطبيب







Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about different illnesses and treatments.
   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن الأمراض والعلاج.
2. Practice using "have" to talk about illnesses.
   - يتدرب الطالب علي استخدام الفعل "have" للتحدث عن الأمراض.
3. Listen to and understand a conversation between a doctor and a patient.
   - يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة بين طبيب ومريض.
4. Learn about and use the prefixes "un, ir, il, and im".
   - يتعلم الطالب استخدام بادئات الكلام لاعطاء عكس المعنى (un - ir - il - im).
5. Understand the difference between /f/ and /v/ sounds.
   - يفهم الطالب الفرق بين الصوتين / f / و / v /.
6. Write a short paragraph about staying healthy.
   - يكتب الطالب فقرة إنشائية عن كيف تكون بصحة جيدة.
7. Plan what to put in a first-aid kit and make a poster.
   - يضع الطالب خطة ما الذى يجب وضعه فى صندوق الاسعافات الأولية ويعمل ملصق.



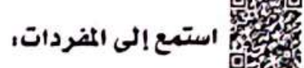






THEY DIDN'T COME TO THE CLUB!





headache
صداع

sore throat
التهاب بالحلق



cold
برد



backache
ألم بالظهر



toothache
ألم بالأسنان





earache
ألم بالأذن



cough كحة / سعال



problem	مشكلة
ankle	كاحل - رسغ القدم
tooth	سِنة
stomach	معدة
shoulder	كتف
swimming	السباحة
dentist	طبيب أسنان

coach	مدرب
feel better	يشعر بتحسن
milk	لبن
honey	عسل
practice	تدريب - تمرين
club	نادى
really	حقًا / جدًا

Unit 8 At the doctor's

Adjectives صفات

good جيد	careful حريص
OK بصحة جيدة	worried قلق
bad سيء	

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
hope يأمل	hoped	have / has مصاب بـ - يملك	had
talk يتكلم	talked	hurt يؤلم	hurt
		say يقول	said

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 لسؤال شخص مما تشكو؟

- What's the matter? مما تشكو؟

وللرد نستخدم: My + عضو الجسم + hurts.

- My tooth hurts.

2 لطلب شىء بطريقة مهذبة

- Can I + مصدر الفعل ....? هل من الممكن أن.....؟

- Can I have some milk and honey?

Study the following

1. Did you have a good day at the club? - هل قضيت يومًا ممتعًا فى النادى؟
2. Only five people came to the club today. - أتى خمسة أشخاص فقط إلى النادى اليوم.
3. Are you OK? - هل انت بخير؟
4. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. - اصيب صديقى طارق بألم فى كاحله فى تدريب كرة القدم الليلة الماضية.
5. Two of my friends have a cold. - اصيب اثنين من زملائى بالبرد.
6. The coach told us to be careful. - أخبرنا المدرب بأن نكون حذرين.
7. How do you feel? - كيف تشعر؟
8. I hope they'll feel better tomorrow. - انتمي ان يشعروا بتحسن غدًا.



9 I'm worried about my friends. - انا قلق علي زملائي.

10 What's the matter? - مما تشكو؟

11 Can I have some milk and honey? - هل ممكن أن أتناول بعض من اللبن والعسل؟

12 It really hurts. - انها تؤلمني حقًا.

13 Amr has an earache from swimming. - عمرو مصاب بألم فى الأذن من السباحة.

1 Listen and read: How does Fares feel today? استمع واقرأ: كيف يشعر فارس اليوم؟



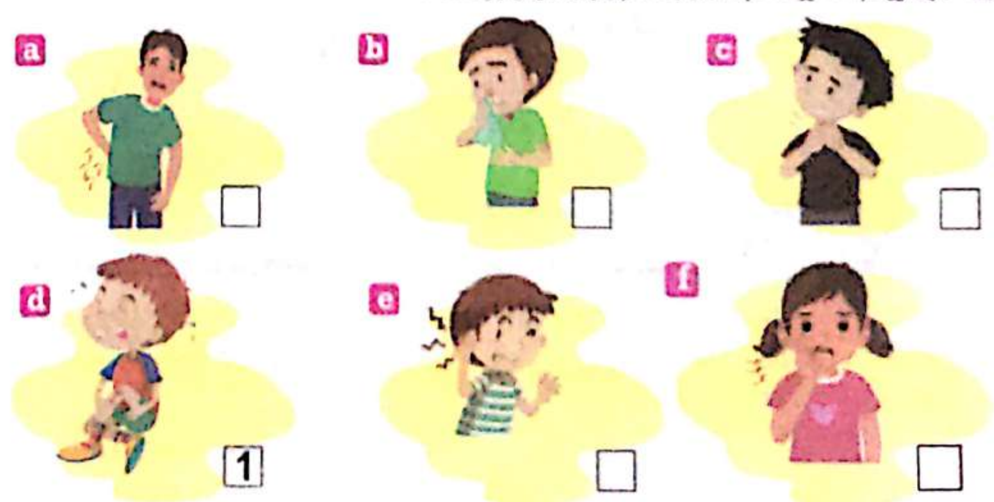
استمع إلى النص:

Tapescript  نص الاستماع

Mom : Hi Fares! Did you have a good day at the club?
Fares : Not really. Only five people came to the club today!
Mom : Oh no! Are they OK?
Fares : No, they have problems. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. And Amr has an earache from swimming.
Mom : What about your cousin Lama? Your aunt said she had a toothache.
Fares : No, she wasn't there. I think she went to the dentist. Two of my friends have a cold. The coach told us to be careful. When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home!
Mom : How do you feel?
Fares : Well, I have a backache and I'm worried about my friends. I hope they'll feel better tomorrow.
Mom : I hope so, too!

2 Listen again and number the photos in the order that Mom and Fares talk about them:

استمع مرة أخرى ورقم الصور حسب الحوار السابق بين فارس ووالدته.



3 Listen again. Circle the correct words استمع مرة أخرى. اختر الكلمة الصحيحة:

1. Fares had a **bad** / **good** day at the club.
2. Tarek hurt his **ankle** / **ear** at football practice.
3. Fares thinks Lama went to the **doctor** / **dentist**.
4. Two of Fares's friends have **a cold** / **an earache**.
5. Fares's **leg** / **back** hurts.

4 Read the words in the box. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences, then listen and check:

اقرأ الكلمات فى المربع. أنظر إلى الصور وأكمل الجمل، ثم استمع وتأكد:



cough - headache - shoulder - toothache

❶
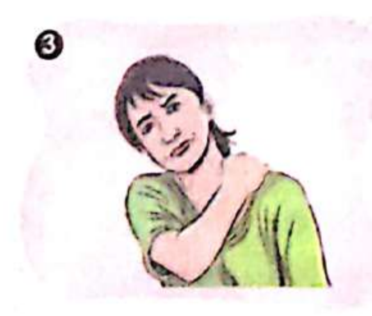


Mom: What's the matter, Dina?
Do you have a toothache ?
Dina: Yes. My tooth hurts!

❷



Mom, can I have some milk and honey for my ...., please?

❸



Ouch! My .... hurts!

❹



Mom: What's the matter, Wael?
Does your stomach hurt?
Wael: No, I have a ....



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Amr had a ....
   - a headache
   - b toothache
   - c backache
   - d sore throat
2. Amr didn't come to the .... practice.
   - a tennis
   - b basketball
   - c football
   - d swimming
3. Amr went to the ....
   - a vet
   - b dentist
   - c nurse
   - d doctor
4. The doctor told Amr to have .... drinks.
   - a cold
   - b hot
   - c sweet
   - d unhealthy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I went to the dentist because I had a/an ....
   - a earache
   - b headache
   - c toothache
   - d backache
2. The coach told us to be ....
   - a care
   - b careful
   - c careless
   - d bad
3. I'm .... about my sick friends.
   - a worried
   - b good
   - c happy
   - d lucky
4. I have a cough, so I should .... home.
   - a clean
   - b stay
   - c hope
   - d leave

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

Fares had a bad day yesterday. He went to the club but only five of his friends came. They had problems. His friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practise last night. And Amr had an earache from swimming. Two of his friends had a cold. His cousin Lama went to the dentist because she had a toothache. Fares was very worried about his friends.

(الشرقية - أبو حماد ٢٠٢٣)

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about Fares's ....
   - a parents
   - b family
   - c friends
   - d sister
2. Fares was very .... about his friends.
   - a happy
   - b worried
   - c unfair
   - d tired

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where did Fares go yesterday?

----

4. Why did Lamma go to the dentist?

----

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. matter - is - What - the?

----

2. I - have - Can - milk - some?

----

3. Ali - throat - a sore - has.

----

4. should - stay - We - home.

----

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My tooth .... (hurting).
2. Can I .... (has) some honey?
3. How .... (does) you feel?
4. What .... (are) the matter?

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how do you feel ---

7 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

A toothache

Guiding phrases

tooth hurts - go to the dentist



How are you?



Key vocabulary

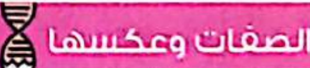


استمع إلى المفردات:

family members	أفراد الأسرة
crowded	مزدحم
injections	حقن
corridor	طرقة – ممر
unwell	مريض – ليس بحالة جيدة
relative (s)	قريب (أقارب)
staff	هيئة الموظفين (طاقم العاملين)
helpful	مفيد

Other words كلمات أخرى

care for	يعتنى بـ
bridge	جسر - كوبرى
throat	حلق
playground	ملعب
bandage	ضمادة
feel well	يشعر انه بخير
southern	جنوبى
sick person = patient	شخص مريض
alone	بمفرده
instead of	بدلاً من
Don't worry	لا تقلق
cut	جرح
text	نص
class	فصل - حصة



Adjectives & opposites الصفات وعكسها

responsible	مسئول	irresponsible	غير مسئول
legal	شرعى – قانونى	illegal	غير قانونى
moral	أخلاقى	immoral	غير اخلاقى
polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب
possible	ممكن	impossible	غير ممكن
fit	لائق بدنيا	unfit	غير لائق بدنيًا
usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
stay	يقيم - يبقى	stayed	fall	يقع / يسقط	fell
clean	ينظف	cleaned	come in	يدخل	came in
turn	يحول - يلف	turned	teach	يُدرس / يعلم	taught
care	يعتنى بـ	cared	give	يعطى	gave
work	يعمل	worked	become	يصبح	became
treat	يعالج	treated	learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 have / has مصاب بـ

Verb to have

- يستخدم الفعل **have / has** للتحدث عن الأمراض بمعنى مصاب بـ كالآتى:

I - you - we - they - اسم جمع → **have** } + اسم المرض .
He - she - it - اسم مفرد → **has**

- I have a headache.
- He has a sore throat.

◉ **وللنفى نستخدم الصيغة التالية:**

I - you - we - they- اسم جمع → **don't have** } + اسم المرض .
He - she - it - اسم مفرد → **doesn't have**

- I don't have a headache.
- He doesn't have a toothache.

◉ **وللسؤال نستخدم الصيغة التالية:**

Do + I - you - we - they - اسم جمع + **have** } + اسم المرض ?
Does + he - she - it - اسم مفرد + **have**

- Do you have a cold? Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
- Does he have a cold? Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.

The prefixes (un-ir-il-im) البادئات

2 prefixes البادئات

- هناك بعض المقاطع التى تسمى بادئات والتى يمكن اضافتها اول بعض الكلمات حيث تغير المعنى مثال البادئات (un ،ir ،il ،im) والتى تعطى النفى من الكلمة :
- و تستخدم هذه البادئات قبل الصفات لاعطاء عكس المعنى للصفة مثل:

usual → unusual	well → unwell

- تستخدم البادئة "ir" إذا بدأت الصفة بحرف "r":

- "ir" → responsible → irresponsible

- تستخدم البادئة "il" عندما تبدأ الصفة بحرف "l":

- "il" → legal → illegal

- تستخدم البادئة "im" اذا بدأت الصفة بحرفى "m , p":

- "im" → possible → impossible
  moral → immoral

Study the following

1. Do you have a headache?
   - هل انت مصاب بـ صداع؟
2. Does Nader have a headache?
   - هل نادر مصاب بـ صداع؟
3. I have a cut on my arm.
   - لدى جرح فى ذراعى.
4. Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a bandage on it.
   - لا تقلق. سوف أنظف الجرح واضع عليه ضمادة.
5. The hospital treats patients from all over the country.
   - تعالج المستشفى المرضى من كل انحاء البلاد.
6. It is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone.
   - من غير المألوف ان يذهب الشخص المريض للمستشفى بمفرده.
7. Family usually go with their unwell relatives.
   - تذهب الأسرة عادة مع الشخص المريض من اقاربهم.
8. Some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections.
   - يتعلم بعض الناس كيفية تغيير الضمادات والبعض الآخر يتعلم كيفية إعطاء الحقن.

9. The nurses become teachers and the family members become students.

- تصبح الممرضات معلمات ويصبح افراد الأسرة متعلمين.

10. They have classes to teach the families.

- لديهم حصص (دروس) لتعليم العائلات (الأسر).

11. It also helps the families to care for their relatives.

- تساعد أيضًا الاسر فى الاهتمام بأقاربهم.

12. The staff at this hospital do something special.

- تفعل هيئة الموظفين فى هذه المستشفى شيئًا مميزاً.

1 Listen and read. What's the matter with Ashraf?

استمع واقرأ. مما يشكو أشرف؟



استمع إلى النص:



Ashraf : Hello, Doctor. I don't feel well.

Doctor : What's the matter, Ashraf? Do you have a headache?

Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a headache.

Doctor : Do you have a stomachache?

Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a stomachache.

Doctor : Do you have a toothache?

Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a toothache. I have ... I have ... Achoo!

Doctor : Oh, dear! You have a cold. Stay home, sleep well, and take this medicine.

2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences:

انظر إلى الصور. أكمل الجمل:

1.  Salma
2.  Amir
3.  Reem
4.  Tarek
5.  Lama

1. Amir has a stomachache.
2. .... a toothache.
3. .... a cold.
4. .... an earache.
5. .... a headache.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences or questions:

ضع الكلمات فى ترتيبها الصحيح لتكون جمل أو أسئلة :

1. you / an earache / Do / have / ?

---

2. sore / a / I / throat / have / .

---

3. a / has / He / cold / .

---

4. Nader / have / Does / headache / a / ?

---

5. he / No, / doesn't / .

---

4 Read. What part of her body has Nahla hurt?

اقرأ. أى جزء من أجزاء الجسم يؤلم نهلة؟

: Come in, Nahla. What's the matter?

Nahla : I fell over in the playground.

: Oh, dear. Where does it hurt?

Nahla : Here. I have a cut on my arm.

: Oh, yes, I see. Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a bandage on it.

Nahla : Thank you, nurse.

5 Listen and read. Which country is this hospital in?

استمع واقرأ. أى دولة بها المستشفى؟



استمع إلى النص

A special Hospital



In a hospital in Bangalore(1), a city in southern India, there are many patients. The hospital treats(2) patients from all over the country. With every patient, there are about ten family members(3). In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone(4). Family usually go with their unwell relative(5). This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. But instead of(6) telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something special(7). They turn a problem into something wonderful. They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections(8).

Arabic Meaning

١- مدينة بانجالور (جنوب الهند)
٢- يعالج
٣- أعضاء
٤- بمفرده
٥- قريب
٦- بدلا من
٧- مميز
٨- حقن

Each afternoon, staff[9] from the hospital turn the corridors into classrooms. The nurses become teachers and the family members - and sometimes even the patients - become the students. Not only does[10] this help the hospital staff, but it also helps the families to care for their relatives when they go home. The staff know that the lessons work because not as many patients return[11] to the hospital now.

٩-هيئة الموظفين
١٠-ليس فقط
١١-يعود

6 Complete the summary of the text with the words in the box:

أكمل ملخص النص بالكلمات من بين الأقواس:

helpful - hospital - injection - staff - patients - relatives

The text is about a ① .... in India. It is a very busy place that treats ② .... from all over the country. People usually travel to the hospital with many ③ .... so this means the hospital is always very crowded. At the hospital, the ④ .... teach the family members how to do useful things, like changing a bandage or giving an ⑤ ....

This is ⑥ .... for both the staff and the patients.

7 Rewrite these sentences so they mean the opposite. Use the prefix un-:

أعد كتابة الجمل لاعطاء عكس المعنى. استخدم البادئة "un":

1. Tarek is happy.

----

2. The bridge is safe.

----

3. Ramy is fit.

----

8 Look at the chart. Add the prefix ir-, il-, or im- to these words:

ضع البادئات الآتية (ir ,il ,im) للكلمات لاعطاء عكس المعنى:

1. legal ---------------- 2. polite ----------------

3. moral ---------------- 4. regular ----------------





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. My friend Hazem was .... yesterday.
   a good b ill c happy d excited
2. Hazem's .... hurts.
   a ankle b shoulder c stomach d tooth
3. The .... said to Hazem to stay home.
   a parents b doctor c teacher d friend
4. Hazem took the .... and felt well.
   a food b homework c medicine d water

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I have a .... on my arm.
   a sore b cut c cold d throat
2. Do you .... an earache?
   a stay b hope c have d see
3. It's helpful for patients to learn how to .... injections.
   a give b treat c fall d return
4. Family usually go to hospitals with their .... relatives.
   a well b unwell c impolite d impossible

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. I - my - arm - have - a cut - on. ....
2. it - does - Where - hurt? ....
3. unwell - go with - usually - Family - their - relative. ....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My Friend Rana .... (have) an earache.
2. .... (Do) Emad have a cold?
3. .... (Doesn't) worry. I'll clean the cut.
4. The opposite of "moral" is .... (irmoral).

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

what's the matter ....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Lesson 3 ★ The power of honey




استمع إلى المفردات:


bandage
ضمادة



sunscreen
كريم واقي من الشمس


pills
أقراص دواء


honey and lemon
عسل وليمون


wound
جرح


cut knee
جرح بالركبة

treatment	علاج
heal	يلتئم/ يشفى
bacteria	بكتريا
sunburn	حرق شمس

Other words كلمات أخرى



basbousa	بسبوسة
injures	اصابات
substance	مادة
recently	حديثًا / مؤخرًا
illnesses	أمراض
countries	دول - بلاد
thousand = 1000	ألف
however	بالرغم من / مع ذلك
medical care	رعاية طبية
jar	برطمان
perhaps	ربما
types	أنواع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed
kill	يقتل	killed
treat	يعالج	treated
heal	يلتئم / يُشفى	healed
damage	يتلف	damaged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
cut	يجرح	cut
know	يعرف	knew
make	يصنع	made
get better	يتحسن	got better

Study the following

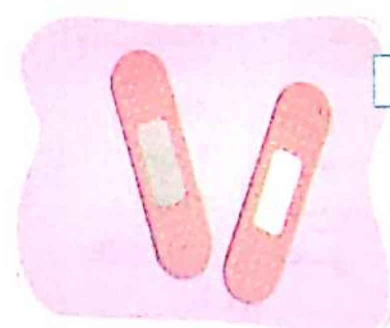
1. I cut my knee last week. جرحت ركبتى الأسبوع الماضى.
2. My grandpa put a bandage on it. وضع جدى ضمادة على الجرح.
3. Did you know that honey isn't only a food? هل تعلم أن العسل ليس بطعام فقط؟
4. Doctors have used honey for thousands of years. استخدم الأطباء العسل لآلاف السنين.
5. It is also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses. يستخدم أيضًا كعلاج لبعض الجروح والأمراض.
6. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors. تم استخدام (العسل) كعلاج للجروح بواسطة الأطباء المصريين.
7. Some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. تحتوى بعض أنواع العسل على أشياء تساعد فى قتل البكتريا.
8. You must be careful. يجب عليك أن تكون حذرًا.
9. Honey is the sweetest substance on Earth. العسل هو أكثر مادة مذاقها حلو على وجه الأرض.

Definitions تعريفات

treatment	علاج	medical care to help you get better
wound	جرح	an injury that damage your skin
bacteria	بكتريا	very small things that can make you ill
heal	يلتئم - يشفى	to get better

1 Look at these items. Match them to the problems.

انظر إلى الأشياء وصلها بالمشكلات المناسبة لها.



a. bandage



b. sunscreen

1- a sore throat

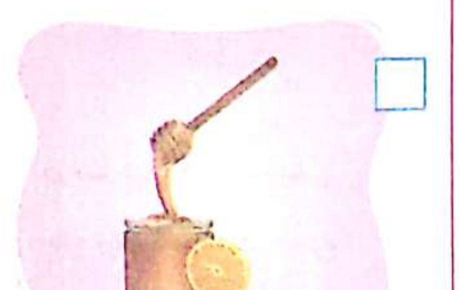


2- a cut knee



3- sunburn

4- a headache



c. honey and lemon



d. pills

2 When was the last time you needed an item from Exercise 1? What happened? Tell your partner.

تى أخر مرة أحتجت فيها لأشياء من التمرين رقم ١؟ ماذا حدث؟ أبلغ زميلك.



I cut my knee last week. My grandma put a bandage on it.

I had sunburn so I --

----

3 Read the first paragraph of an article about honey. What two ways does the writer say we use honey in food?

اقرأ الفقرة الأولى عن العسل. ما هما الطريقتين التى نستخدم بهما العسل فى الطعام؟

استمع إلى النص:

Do you like honey? Perhaps(1) you enjoy eating it for breakfast. Or maybe you enjoy it in a sweet basbousa? But did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a treatment(2) for some injuries(3) and illnesses.

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds(4) by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Recently(5), scientists have tried to find out exactly(6) why honey is so good for healing(7) wounds and treating illnesses.

Scientists know that some types of honey contain(8) things that can help to kill bacteria(9). This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment. So, if you have a jar of honey in your cupboard(10), you can mix it with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut knee!

Arabic Meaning

١- ربما
٢-علاج
٣-اصابات
٤-جروح
٥-حديثا-مؤخرا
٦-بالضبط
٧- التئام
٨-يحتوى على
٩-بكتريا
١٠-خزانة

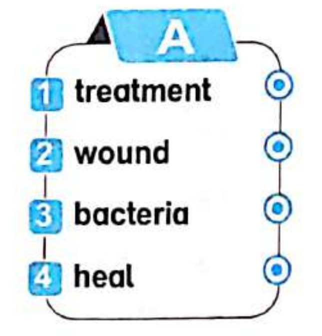
4 Now read the full article. Check (√) the facts that are mentioned:

الآن اقرأ الحوار كاملاً. ضع علامة (√) أمام الحقائق المذكورة:

1. Bees make honey. ☐
2. Honey is the sweetest substance on Earth. ☐
3. Doctors have used honey for thousands of years. ☐
4. Some types of honey can kill bacteria. ☐

5 Look at the words in bold in the article. Match them to their meaning

انظر إلى الكلمات بخط سميك فى المقال. صل الكلمة بمعناها .



A	B
1 treatment	a. to get better
2 wound	b. very small things that can make you ill
3 bacteria	c. medical care to help you get better
4 heal	d. an injury that damages your skin

Unit 8 At the doctor's



- ندرس فى هذا الدرس الفرق بين صوتى حرفى الـ (f) , (v).
- ينطق حرف (f) باستخدام الأسنان العليا والشفاه السفلى ولكن بدون اهتزاز الأحبال الصوتية.
- ينطق حرف (V) باستخدام الأسنان العليا والشفاه السفلى مع اهتزاز الأحبال الصوتية.
- وفيما يلى الكلمات التى تحتوى على الصوتين (f) , (v).

استمع إلى الكلمات



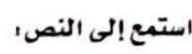


leave	يغادر
live	يعيش
very	جدًا
save	يحفظ/ يوفر
lovely	جميل

life	حياة
safe	آمن
few	قليل
fine	جميل
fast	سريع
friend	صديق

1 Complete the words with 'f' or 'v'. Then listen and say:

أكمل الكلمات باستخدام الحرفين (F) أو (V) ثم استمع إلى النص،

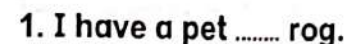


استمع إلى النص،





1. I have a pet .... rog.
2. Hany is a .... et.
3. I have a very long scar ....






4. Do you like .... egetables?
5. I really like .... ruit.
6. We like watching tele .... ision .

2 Read, listen, and circle. Then listen again and repeat:

اقرأ واستمع ثم ضع دائرة. استمع مرة أخرى وردد النطق،


استمع إلى الكلمات،

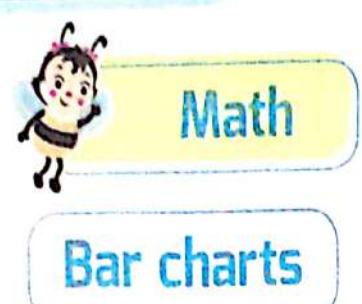
1. van	fan
2. leave	leaf
3. life	live
4. ferry	very
5. few	view
6. safe	save

How to make the /f/ sound:
Rest your top teeth on your lower lip.
Blow, but **don't** use your voice!
How to make the /v/ sound:
Rest your top teeth on your lower lip.
Blow, but **do** use your voice!

3 Say these sentences. Say them again as fast as you can:

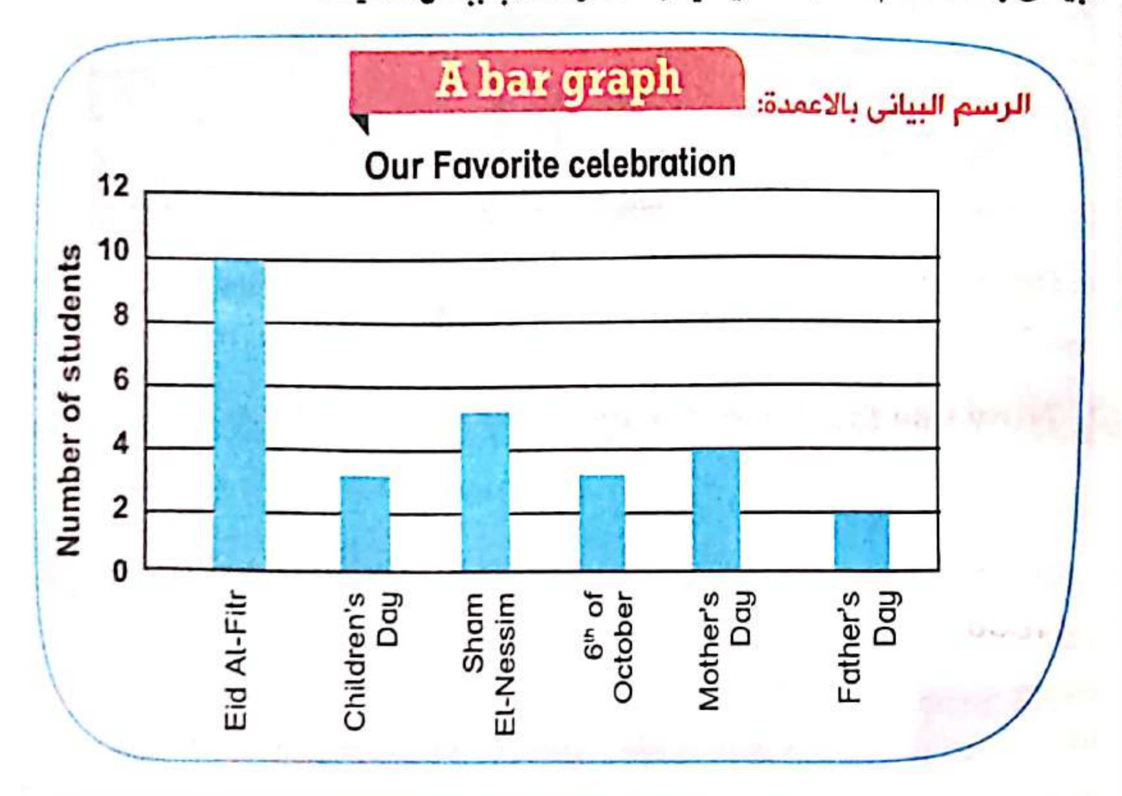
قل هذه الجمل. انطقهم بسرعة على قدر استطاعتك (لتتمكن من التفرقة بين F و V)،

1. Is there a fan in the very big van?
2. Leave the lovely leaf on the tree!
3. A few friends saw the very fine view.
4. The ferry is very fast!
5. It's safe to save your money here!



Bar charts

.يستخدم شريط الرسم البيانى لعرض المعلومات على شكل أعمدة وفيما يلى عرض نموذج للرسم البيانى باستخدام الأعمدة حيث يمثل احتفال الطلاب ببعض الأعياد:

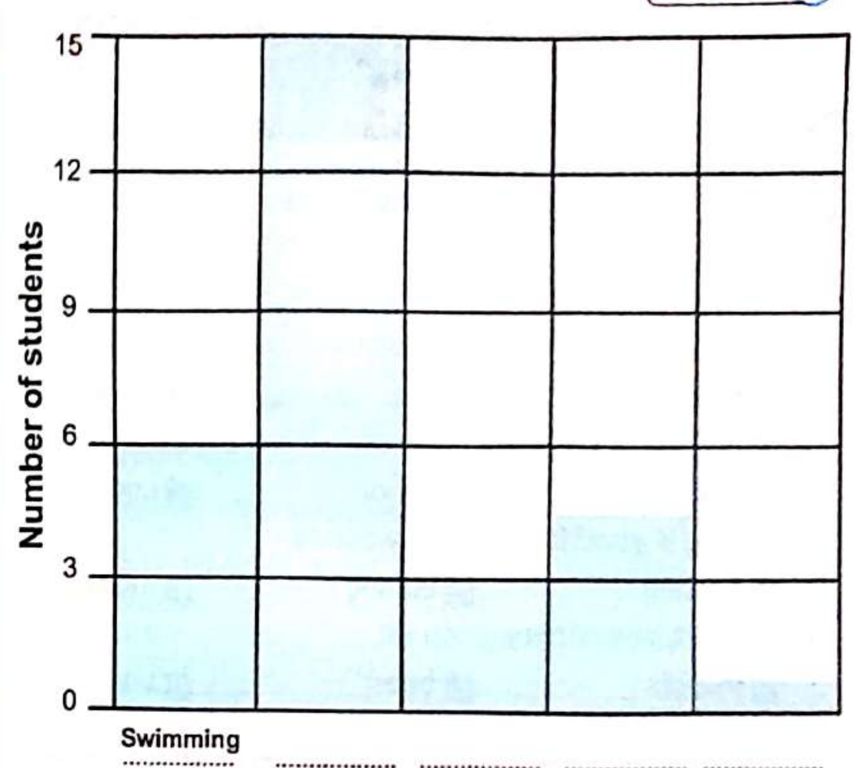


1 Look and read. Then label the bar chart: انظر واقرأ. اكمل الرسم البيانى.

A bar chart is a way of showing information. Last week, 30 students were asked about their favorite free-time activity to stay healthy. Here is the result of their survey. Which favorite activity was enjoyed by the biggest number of students?

الرسم البيانى هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات. تم سؤال ٣٠ تلميذ الأسبوع الماضي عن النشاط المفضل لديهم فى أوقات فراغهم للمحافظة على صحتهم. وفيما يلى نتيجة استطلاع الرأي. أي من الأنشطة المفضلة لديه أكبر عدد من التلاميذ؟

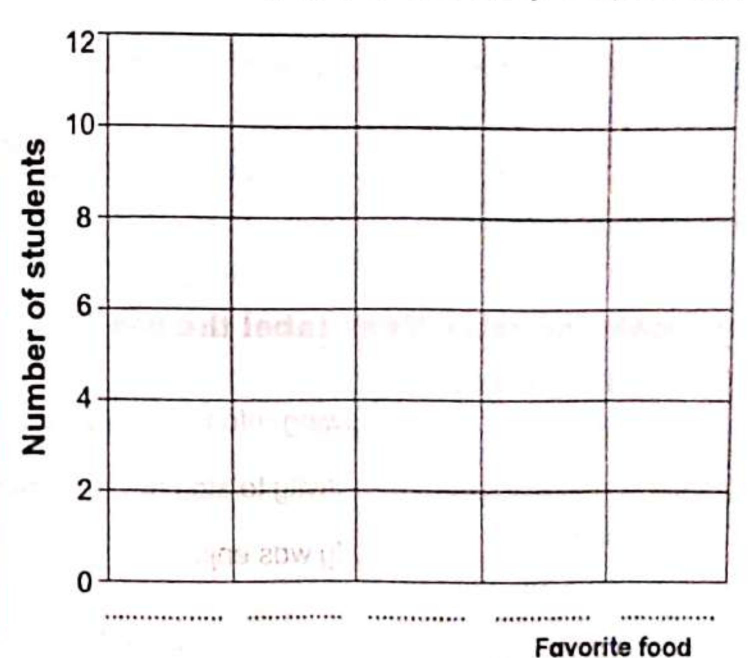
Favorite activity	No. of students
Swimming	6
Football	15
Reading	3
Taking long walks	5
Cooking	1



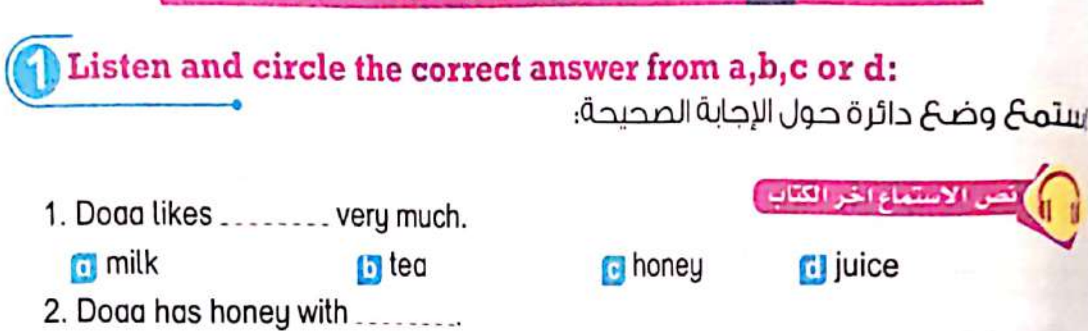
2 Now use this table to complete the bar chart:

الآن استخدم هذا الجدول لتكمل الرسم البيانى:

Favorite food	No. of students
Ful medames	6
Koshari	6
Kofta	7
Fiteer baladi	9
Shawerma	5







1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Doaa likes .... very much.
   a milk b tea c honey d juice
2. Doaa has honey with ....
   a nuts b lemon c cookies d oranges
3. Honey is good for .... wounds.
   a healing b cutting c making d using
4. Some types of honey can kill ....
   a insects b bees c bacteria d cuts

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

treatment - sunburn - illness - sweetest - cough

I like honey. It's the (1) .... substance on Earth. Doctors used honey for thousand of years. They used it as a (2) .... for some injuries and (3) .... If you have a (4) .... you can mix honey with milk to be better.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I like eating honey for breakfast. We can put honey in some food like basbousa. **It** is also used as a treatment for some injuries. When you cough, you can mix honey with milk. You can drink honey with lemon when you have a sore throat, too. الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم ٢٠٢٣

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea is about ....
   a basbousa b milk c honey d lemon
2. We used honey with .... if you have a sore throat.
   a treatment b lemon c milk d basbousa

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined word "It" refer to?

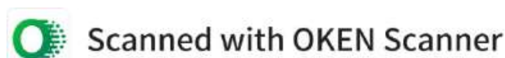
....

4. How can we use the honey?

....



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. week - I - cut - knee - last - my.

----

2. ferry - fast - very - is - The .

----

3. types - Some - of honey - bacteria - can - kill.

----

4. substance - is - on Earth - Honey - the sweetest.

----

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

do bees make honey

----

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Honey

Guiding phrases

kill bacteria- help wound to heal

Lessons 4&5

★ Writing & project



استمع إلى المفردات:



playing sports	لعب الرياضة
eating vegetables	اكل الخضراوات
reading books	قراءة الكتب
getting enough sleep	النوم بشكل كافى
visiting a doctor	زيارة الدكتور
balanced diet	نظام غذائى متوازن
presentation	عرض تقديمى
spending time with friends	قضاء وقت مع الأصدقاء
drinking plenty of water	شرب المياه بكمية كبيرة
expert (s)	خبير / خبراء

Other words كلمات أخرى



focus on	يركز على
scissors	مقص
insect bite cream	كريم ضد لدغ الحشرات
cleansing wipes	مناديل تنظيف مبللة
stay healthy	يحافظ على صحته
exercise	تمرين - تدريب
in addition to	بالإضافة إلى
medical gloves	قفازات طبية
rubber band	رباط مطاطى
safety pin	دبوس مشبك

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
look after	يعتنى	looked after
exercise	يتمرن	exercised
need	يحتاج	needed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
eat	يأكل	ate
do	يفعل	did
keep	يحافظ	kept
get	يحصل علي	got
spend	يقضى	spent

Language Functions
وظائف لغوية

1 Giving advice اعطاء النصيحة

◉ لاعطاء النصيحة نستخدم أحد الصيغ الآتية:

◉ نستخدم (should) لاعطاء النصيحة بمعنى «ينبغي أن» ويأتي بعدها الفعل فى المصدر:

فاعل (كل الضمائر) + should + (inf) مصدر الفعل.

- You should eat healthy foods.

2 It's important

◉ وهناك صيغة أخرى لاعطاء النصيحة باستخدام "It's important to" من المهم أن ....

It's important to + inf مصدر الفعل.

- It's important to get enough sleep.

3 One of the best ways

◉ وهناك صيغة أخرى للنصيحة وهى:

One of the best ways to + inf مصدر الفعل. من أفضل الطرق أن....

- One of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends.

Study the following

1. My presentation today is about staying healthy.
العرض التقديمى اليوم عن كيف تحافظ على صحتك.
2. It's really important to eat healthy foods. من المهم أن تتناول اطعمة صحية.
3. You should do some exercise every day. يجب عليك أن تؤدى بعض التمارين كل يوم.
4. It's very important to keep your body moving. من المهم أن تبقى جسمك فى حالة حركة.
5. Playing sports at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.
لعب الرياضة فى المدرسة أو مع الأصدقاء طريقة جيدة للتمرين.
6. It's important to get enough sleep. من المهم أن تنام بشكل كافى.
7. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.
يعتقد الخبراء بأنك تحتاج من ثمانية إلى تسعة ساعات نوم كل ليلة.
8. You should make time to focus on being happy. يجب عليك أن تجعل وقتك سعيدًا.
9. Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.
قضاء وقت مع الأسرة والأصدقاء طريقة رائعة للسعادة.

1 Read Asma's presentation. Check (√) the things that she talks about:

اقرأ العرض التقديمى «لأسما». ضع علامة √ على الأشياء التى تحدثت عنها؟

My list of healthy things to do

- playing sport ☐
- eating vegetables ☐
- reading books ☐
- getting enough sleep ☐
- visiting a doctor ☐
- spending time with friends ☐
- drinking plenty of water ☐





استمع إلى النص:

My presentation[1] today is about staying healthy. It is really[2] important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet[3]. There are lots of other things that we can do to look after our health.

You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving[4]. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. It's important to[5] get enough sleep. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

In addition[6] to this, one of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends. It's not only your body that you need to keep healthy, you should make time to focus on[7] being happy, too. Spending time with your family and friends is a great[8] way to do this.

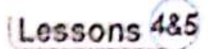
Arabic Meaning

١- عرض تقديمى
٢- بالفعل
٣- نظام غذائى متوازن
٤- يحافظ على حركة الجسم
٥- من المهم أن
٦- بالإضافة إلى
٧- يركز
٨- رائع

2 Read Asma's presentation again. Complete the sentences:

اقرأ مقال «أسما» مرة أخرى. أكمل الجمل.

1. Asma says it's important to eat ....
2. Asma says that .... is a good way to exercise .
3. You should sleep between .... hours every night.
4. Spending time with your friends is good for your ....



3 Asma's class completed a table about staying healthy. Look at the table. Complete it for you:

اكمل فصل ، أسماء جدول عن كيف تحافظ على صحتك. انظر إلى الجدول. أكمل الجدول الخاص بك ،

Key: 🙂🙂🙂 = very good 🙂🙂 = OK 🙂 = could do better

Eating healthy foods	🙂
Getting enough sleep	🙂🙂
Drinking plenty of water	🙂🙂🙂
Playing sport	🙂🙂🙂
Spending time with friends	🙂🙂

Eating healthy foods	
Getting enough sleep	
Drinking plenty of water	
Playing sport	
Spending time with friends	

4 Work in groups. Discuss and decide:

اعمل فى مجموعات وناقش وقرر ،

You are going on a school trip to the desert. Your class is responsible for packing the firs-aid kit. Look at the objects below. In groups, discuss which four items you want to take and why these are the most useful.

Take bandages in case someone cuts their knee.

- سوف تذهب في رحلة مدرسية فى الصحراء. وفصلك مسئول عن تعبئة صندوق الإسعافات الأولية.انظر إلى الأشياء بالأسفل. ناقش فى مجموعات أى من هذه الأشياء سوف توضع فى صندوق الإسعافات الأولية. ولماذا هذه الأشياء مفيدة؟


bandages

sunscreen


scissors


insect bite cream


cleansing wipes


medical gloves


rubber bands


safety pins


soap



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. What do you do to .... healthy?
   a sleep b stay c spend d make
2. It's important to have a .... diet.
   a balanced b irregular c unhealthy d impossible
3. We should take .... in case someone cuts their knee.
   a sunscreen b bandages c honey d injections
4. I need ...., I get sunburn.
   a scissors b soap c sunscreen d bandages

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

time - plenty - exercise - hours - focus

It's very important to have a balanced diet. We should eat healthy foods. We should do some (1) .... every day. We should sleep between eight or nine (2) .... every night. We can spend (3) .... with our friends and family and make time to (4) .... on being happy, too.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. should - do - You - exercise - some.

   ....

2. important - It's - enough - get - sleep - to .

   ....

3. do - What - stay - do - healthy - you - to?

   ....

4. sport - a good - Playing - is - to exercise - way.

   ....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. You should .... (sleeps) between 8 and 9 hours every night.
2. It's very important to .... (kept) your body moving.
3. You .... (should to) eat healthy foods.
4. .... (Drank) plenty of water every day.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

you should eat vegetables

....

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Keeping healthy

Guiding questions:

1- What do you do to stay healthy?
2- Who should you spend your time with?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Review

Illnesses الأمراض


backache
ألم بالظهر


cold
برد


sore throat
التهاب بالحلق


headache
صداع


earache
ألم بالأذن


toothache
ألم بالأسنان


cough
كحة


cut knee
جرح بالركبة



sunscreen
كريم واقى من الشمس


pills
أقراص دواء


honey and lemon
عسل وليمون


wound
جرح


bandage
ضمادة

unwell	مريض - ليس بحالة جيدة
relative (s)	قريب (أقارب)
staff	هيئة الموظفين
helpful	مفيد
treatment	علاج
heal	يلتئم/ يشفى
playing sports	لعب الرياضة
eating vegetables	اكل الخضراوات
reading books	قراءة الكتب
getting enough sleep	النوم بشكل كافى
visiting a doctor	زيارة الدكتور
balanced diet	نظام غذائى متوازن

family members	أفراد الأسرة
crowded	مزدحم
injections	حقن
corridor	طرقة - ممر
bacteria	بكتريا
sunburn	حرق شمس
presentation	عرض تقديمى
spending time with friends	قضاء وقت مع الأصدقاء
drinking plenty of water	شرب المياه بكمية كبيرة
expert (s)	خبير / خبراء

Adjectives & opposites  الصفات وعكسها

responsible	مسئول	irresponsible	غير مسئول
legal	شرعى - قانونى	illegal	غير قانونى
moral	أخلاقى	immoral	غير اخلاقى
polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب
possible	ممكن	impossible	غير ممكن
fit	لائق بدنيا	unfit	غير لائق بدنيًا
usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم



Pronunciation

- لاحظ الفرق بين الصوتين /f/ و /v/:

F /f/ sound


frog ضفدع


scarf وشاح/كوفية


fan مروحة


fruit فاكهة

V /v/ sound



vet طبيب بيطرى


vegetables خضراوات


television تلفاز


van شاحنة مغلقة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
hope	يأمل	hoped
use	يستخدم	used
turn	يحول - يلف	turned
care	يعتنى بـ	cared
treat	يعالج	treated
kill	يقتل	killed
heal	يلتئم / يُشفى	healed
damage	يتلف	damaged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
have/has	مصاب بـ - يملك	had
hurt	يؤلم	hurt
fall	يقع / يسقط	fell
teach	يُدرس / يعلم	taught
give	يعطى	gave
become	يصبح	became
cut	يجرح	cut
know	يعرف	knew
get better	يتحسن	got better





Grammar قواعد لغوية

Verb to have

1 have / has مصاب بـ

- يستخدم الفعل have / has للتحدث عن الأمراض بمعنى مصاب بـ كالآتى:



I - you - we - they- اسم جمع → have } + اسم المرض .
He - she - it- اسم مفرد → has

- I have a headache. - He has a sore throat.

◉ وللنفى نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

I - you - we - they- اسم جمع → don't have } + اسم المرض .
He - she - it- اسم مفرد → doesn't have

- I don't have a headache. - He doesn't have a toothache.

◉ وللسؤال نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

Do + I - you - we - they - اسم جمع + have } + اسم المرض ?
Does + he - she - it اسم مفرد + have

- Do you have a cold? Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
- Does he have a cold? Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.

The prefixes (un - ir - il - im) البادئات



- تستخدم هذه البادئات قبل الصفات لإعطاء عكس المعنى للصفة، مثل:

polite →	impolite	well →	unwell
regular →	irregular	legel →	illegel

- My friend Gamal is unwell.
- This boy is shouting. He's impolite.



مهارات الكتابة

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words.

Lesson 1

A toothache

1. I had a toothache yesterday. I told my father. My father took me to the dentist. The dentist gave me some medicine. I took the medicine. I felt better. My father told me not to eat many sweets.

Lesson 3

Honey

2. Honey is very useful. I enjoy eating it for breakfast. Honey contains things that can help to kill bacteria. It helps wound to heal more quickly. When you have a sore throat, you can have honey with lemon.

Lessons 4 & 5

Keeping healthy

3. It's important to keep healthy. We should eat healthy foods and have a balanced diet. We should drink plenty of water and do sports. Spending time with family and friends to be happy.

Activity - Unit 8

A cold

4. I had a cold last week. I didn't feel better. I went to the doctor's. The doctor told me to stay home. The doctor gave me some pills. I took the pills. I felt better today. I stayed home for three days.

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:
استمع واختر:

1. I get up at .... o'clock. (six - seven - eigh
2. I have my .... with my parents. (lunch - breakfast - dinne
3. I like .... (apples - honey - oranges

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below:
اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بالكلمات في الأسفل:

have - matter - doctor's - going

A : Where are you ------------------------------------?

B : I'm going to the ------------------------------------

A : What's the ------------------------------------?

B : I ------------------------------------ a sore throat

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:
اقرأ النص وأجب عن الاسئلة التالية:

Yesterday, Gamal went to the club. Gamal was very sad. His friend Samir hurt his ankle at football practice. His friend Yasser had an earache from swimming. They went to the hospital. Gamal was worried about my friends.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Gamal go yesterday? ------------------------------------
2. Was Gamal happy at the club? ------------------------------------

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. His friend Samir hurt his .... at football practice (foot - arm - ankle)
4. His friend Yasser had an earache from .... (football - swimming - volleyball)
5. Gamal was worried about his .... (brothers - sisters - friends)



D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Do you .... an earache?

   a have   b has   c had

2. I have a pet ....

   a lion   b frog   c elephant

3. What .... the matter, Wael?

   a am   b are   c is

4. Doctors work in a ....

   a school   b hospital   c shop

5. No, I .... have a sore throat.

   a does   b do   c don't

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. scarf - a very - I'm - have - long.

   ----

2. stomach - Does - hurt - your?

   ----

3. worried - my - I'm - friends - about.

   ----

4. fell - in - over - the playground - He.

   ----

5. hurt - his - Tarek - ankle - yesterday.



on Unit 8 Activity



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. It's .... to eat healthy food.
   a irregular   b possible   c illegal   d important
2. We should do some .... with friends.
   a exercise   b food   c sleep   d homework
3. Sleeping for .... hours is good for health.
   a five   b four   c eight   d six
4. Playing sports at .... is a good way to exercise.
   a school   b street   c home   d hospital

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hisham visited his .... relative in hospital.
   a well   b unwell   c legal   d regular
2. .... are very small things that can make you ill. (بني سويف - إدارة بني سويف ٢٠٢٣)
   a Bacteria   b Doctors   c Cupboards   d Knees
3. I bought a long .... for my mother to wear.
   a fan   b scarf   c ferry   d van
4. Drinking plenty of water keeps your body working ....
   a ill   b well   c will   d bad

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

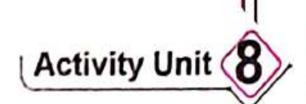
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

earache - care - stay - practice - ill

My brother Hany didn't go to school yesterday. He was (1) .... .He had an (2) .... from swimming. He went to swimming (3) .... last Monday. My father took Hany to the doctor, the doctor told Hany to (4) .... home and took some medicine.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة





4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hazem. My uncle Hani is ill in the hospital in Giza. Our relatives visit him. There are many **patients**. The hospital treats patients from all over the country. The nurses are friendly. The doctors examine patients and give them medicine. My father and I visit him every day. There are many people in the hospital. The hospital is very crowded on Fridays. I come back home. I hope my uncle feel better.

Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**patients**" means .... people.
   a well b sick c happy d tall
2. The hospital is in ....
   a Cairo b Aswan c Giza d Luxor

B- Answer the following questions:

3. When is the hospital crowded? ------------------------------
4. What do the doctors give patients? ------------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. stomach - Does - your - hurt? ------------------------------
2. worried - about - I'm - friends - my. ------------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Walid's ankle .... (hurting).
2. Do you .... (has) a backache?

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

- do you have a sore throat ------------------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

A cold

cold - medicine



My society

Unit 9

My favorite animal

حيواني المفضل







Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research and write about animals.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويعمل بحث ويكتب عن الحيوانات.

2. Listen and read about a trip to a wildlife park.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ عن رحلة إلى حديقة الحياة البرية.

3. Talk about ability now and in the past.

- يتحدث الطالب عن القدرة الآن وفى الماضى.

4. Learn how to say /w/ and /v/ sounds.

- يتعلم الطالب كيفية نطق حرفي /w/ و /v/

5. Write an email about an unusual animal.

- يكتب الطالب إيميل عن حيوان غير مألوف (غريب).

6. Research and make an infographic about animals in a habitat.



- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث ومخطط معلومات بياني عن حيوانات في بيئة ما.







★ Wildlife




استمع إلى المفردات،


panda
الباندا


bat
خفاش


kangaroo
حيوان الكونغر


lion
أسد




penguin
بطريق



dolphin
دولفين


snail حلزون


parrot ببغاء



beautiful	جميل
colorful	زاهي/ كثير الألوان
friendly	ودود / أليف
different	مختلف
amazing	مدهش

strong	قوي
wonderful	رائع
awesome	مذهل
sweet	جميل
cool	رائع / جذاب

Other words كلمات أخرى



wildlife park	حديقة الحياة البرية
shell	قوقعة
sleep upside down	ينام بالمقلوب
snow	جليد
ice	ثلج
fridge	ثلاجة
the rainforest	غابة مطيرة
a bit sad	حزين قليلًا

Australia	استراليا
Africa	أفريقيا
China	الصين
the ocean	المحيط
bamboo	نبات الخيزران
pouch	جراب/ كيس في أسفل بطن الكونغر
the dark	الظلام
rabbit	ارنب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
jump	يقفز	jumped
live	يعيش	lived
stay	يمكث	stayed
want	يريد	wanted
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed
repeat	يردد	repeated

Irregular verbs افعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
fly	يطير	flew
swim	يعوم	swam
sleep	ينام	slept
hide	يختبئ	hid
feed	يطعم	fed
see	يري	saw

Study the following

1. I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family.
   - لقد قضيت يومًا رائعًا في الخارج مع عائلتي بالأمس.
2. I went to the new wildlife park.
   - ذهبت إلى حديقة الحياة البرية الجديدة.
3. The kangaroos were interesting, too.
   - كانت حيوانات الكونغر مثيرة للاهتمام أيضًا.
4. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch.
   - عندما يكونوا صغارًا ، يجلسون داخل جراب أمهم.
5. We said some words for them to repeat.
   - قلنا لهم بعض الكلمات ليرددوها.
6. They were all hiding and I couldn't see them in the dark.
   - كانوا جميعًا مختبئون ولم استطع رؤيتهم فى الظلام.
7. Could you go near the lions?
   - هل استطعت أن تذهب بالقرب من الأسود؟
8. They were in a special place inside.
   - كانوا (البطريق) في مكان خاص بالداخل.

9. They can swim so well. - يمكنهم السباحة جيدًا.
10. I have a shell. I don't have legs or arms. - لدي قوقعة ليس لدي أرجل أو ايدي.
11. I live in Australia. I jump on two legs. - أعيش في استراليا. اقفز على رجلين.
12. I fly at night. I sleep upside down on trees. - اطير فى الليل. أنام بالمقلوب على الأشجار.
13. I swim in a group with my family in the ocean. - اسبح فى مجموعة مع عائلتى فى المحيط.

1 Listen and read. Then say the words: استمع واقرأ. ثم قل الكلمات:

❶ 
kangaroo

❷ 
panda

❸ 
bat

❹ 
lion

❺ 
penguin

❻ 
dolphin

❼ 
snail

❽ 
parrot

2 Read the clues. Write the correct animals:

اقرأ مفاتيح حل الألغاز. اكتب الحيوانات الصحيحة:

1. I live in the garden. I have a shell. I don't have legs or arms. snail
2. I live in Australia. I jump on two legs. kangaroo
3. I fly at night. I sleep upside down on trees. _______
4. I live on ice and snow. I'm black and white. I can swim, but I can't fly. _______
5. I am a bird. I am very beautiful and colorful. I live in the rainforest. _______
6. I live in Africa. I'm a very big cat. I am very strong. _______
7. I am very friendly. I swim in a group with my family in the ocean. _______
8. I live in China. I eat bamboo. I'm big, and black and white. _______

3 Read. Where did Ramez go yesterday?

اقرأ. أين ذهب رامز بالأمس؟

استمع إلى النص:





Tapescript نص الاستماع

Ramez : Hi! I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family.

Ayman : Where did you go?

Ramez : I went to the new wildlife park(1) - it was awesome(2)!

Ayman : What did you see? Could you go near the lions?

Ramez : No, we stayed in the car. But we could see them through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting, too. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch(3) - it's so sweet!

Ayman : What birds did you see?

Ramez : Lots, but my favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! We said some words for them to repeat!

Ayman : What about animals that like the cold? Did you see any?

Ramez : Yes, penguins! They were in a special(4) place inside. It was cold, like a fridge(5). We fed them some fish! I love penguins - they can swim so well and they look so cool!

Ayman : Wow! Was there anything you wanted to see but couldn't?

Ramez : The bats. I'm doing a project on bats at school, so I really wanted to see them! But they were all hiding(6) and I couldn't see them in the dark!

Ayman : Oh well, it sounds(7) amazing! I've got to feed my rabbit now - that's the most wildlife I'll see today!

Arabic Meaning

١- حديقة الحياة البرية
٢- رائع
٣- جراب الكنجر
٤- خاص
٥- ثلاجة
٦- مختبئون
٧- يبدو

4 Complete the summary with the words in the box:

أكمل الملخص بكلمات من القائمة:

project - sad - parrots - park - enjoyed - lions

Yesterday, Ramez went to a wildlife ❶ park with his family. He ❷ .... it very much. They saw lots of different animals like ❸ ...., kangaroos, and penguins. He saw his favorite birds, the ❹ .... He was a bit ❺ .... because he didn't see the bats and he's doing a ❻ .... on them at school.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. My uncle has a ....

   a parrot   b rabbit   c fish   d snail

2. The parrot's name is ....

   a Tingo   b Pingo   c Mingo   d Singo

3. The parrot can .... what we say.

   a walk   b jump   c take   d repeat

4. The parrot has a beautiful..........

   a beak   b head   c mouth   d nose

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. When .... are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch.

   a lions   b parrots   c kangaroos   d penguins

2. A .... has a shell and doesn't have legs or arms. (القليوبية - إدارة بنها ٢٠٢٣)

   a snail   b dolphin   c bat   d panda

3. The bat can sleep .... down on trees.

   a upside   b inside   c outside   d above

4. The .... lives on ice. It can swim, but it can't fly. (المنوفية - إدارة مدينة السادات ٢٠٢٣)

   a snail   b parrot   c penguin   d kangaroo

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

fed - pouch - shell - parrots - awesome

I'm doing a project at school about wildlife animals so, I went to a wildlife park with my family. We saw lots of animals like penguins, parrots and kangaroos. I watched the little Kangaroos sat inside their mom's (1) .... My favorite birds were the (2) .... They were (3) .... and could talk. I loved penguins and (4) ...... them some fish.



4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. lives - in - The - China - panda.

----

2. see - birds - What - you - did?

----

3. upside - down - Bats - sleep - can. (الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم ٢٠٢٣)

----

4. yesterday - go - Ramez - Where - did?

----

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I .... (have) a wonderful day out yesterday.
2. I can swim, but I .... (can) fly.
3. I've got to .... (feeding) my rabbit now.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

i couldn't see bats in the dark

----

7 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

My trip to a wildlife park

Guiding questions

1- What did you see?
2- How did you go there?



★ What could you do?
Part 1



Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات.

quickly	بسرعة	busy	مشغول
very fast	بسرعة جدًا	German	اللغة الألمانية
use a computer	يستخدم كمبيوتر	Italian	اللغة الإيطالية
play chess	يلعب الشطرنج	French	اللغة الفرنسية
amazed	مندهش	France	فرنسا
speak English	يتحدث اللغة الإنجليزية		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
speak	يتحدث	spoke	take	يأخذ	took
fly	يطير	flew	ride	يركب	rode
run	يجرى	ran	read	يقرأ	read
drive	يقود	drove	swim	يعوم	swam



Study the following

1. Birds can fly. - تستطيع الطيور أن تطير.
2. Lions can run very fast. - تستطيع الأسود الجري بسرعة جدًا.
3. Bats can sleep upside down on trees. - تنام الخفافيش بالمقلوب على الأشجار.
4. Snails can live in shells. - تعيش الحلزونات في قواقع.



Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 للتعبير عن استطاعة فعل شيء في الحاضر نستخدم:

فاعل + can يستطيع أن + inf فعل فى المصدر.

- Birds **can** fly.
- I **can play** basketball.

◉ فى النفي نستخدم: فاعل + can't لا يستطيع أن + inf فعل فى المصدر.

- Pandas **can't** drive a car.
- I **can't speak** Italian.

◉ فى السؤال نستخدم: Can + فاعل + inf فعل فى المصدر?

- **Can** you play tennis?

◉ لاحظ لا نضع (to) بعد can / can't

2 للتعبير عن استطاعة فعل شيء في الماضي نستخدم:

◉ فى الاثبات: فاعل + could + inf فعل فى المصدر.

- I **could** run fast last year.

◉ فى النفى: فاعل + couldn't + inf فعل فى المصدر.

- I **couldn't** take the bus so I had to walk.

◉ فى السؤال: Could + فاعل + inf فعل فى المصدر?

- **Could** you play the piano last year?

◉ لاحظ لا نضع (to) بعد could / couldn't

◉ ويمكن استخدام when مع could / couldn't كما يلي:

When عندما + فاعل + ماضى بسيط, + فاعل + {could / couldn't} + inf فعل في المصدر.

- **When** I **lived** in France, I **could speak** French.
- OR: I **could speak** French **when** I **lived** in France.

◉ لاحظ استخدام (,) comma إذا بدأنا الجملة بـ When.

Could + فاعل + inf فعل في المصدر + when + فاعل + الماضي البسيط?

- **Could** you ride a bike when you **were** three?

1 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 birds	a. can live in shells
2 lions	b. can sleep upside down on trees
3 snails	c. can fly
4 bats	d. can run very fast



2 Write can or can't: اكتب يستطيع أو لا يستطيع :

1. Bats ....can.... fly very fast.
2. Snails .... move quickly.
3. Parrots .... fly.
4. Pandas .... drive a car.

3 Write could or couldn't: اكتب استطاع أو لم يستطع :

1. When I was two, I couldn't use a computer.
2. I .... read when I was one.
3. My sister .... play chess when she was five, but she .... when she was eight.
4. My cousin .... run when he was a baby.
5. I .... swim when I was a baby, and everyone was amazed.
6. .... you speak English when you were five?

4 Circle the correct word: ضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة :

1. I couldn't say anything in German last year, but now I ....

   a can   b can't   c could

2. Last year, he .... run very quickly, but now he can.

   a can't   b could   c couldn't

3. .... you play the piano when you were a child?

   a Can   b Could   c Couldn't

4. Sorry, I .... help you with your homework. I'm busy.

   a can   b can't   c could



★ The travelers and the tree
Part 2



استمع إلى المفردات:






nuts	exhausted	branch of a tree	trunk of a tree
مكسرات	منهك (متعب جدًا)	فرع شجرة	جذع شجرة

wide	واسع - عريض
famous	مشهور
shelter	مأوى
rest	يستريح / راحة
comfortable	مريح
save	ينقذ
angry	غاضب

shade	ظل
traders	تجار
meeting point	مكان للتجمع (للقاء)
breeze	نسيم (رياح خفيفة)
useless	عديم الفائدة
ungrateful	ناكر الجميل
unkind	غير عطوف



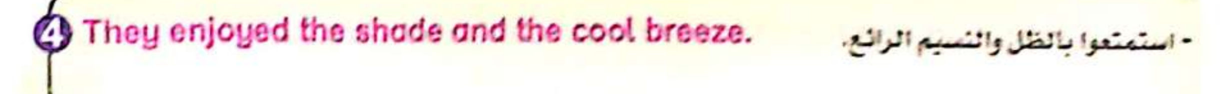
Definitions تعريفات

a breeze نسيم	a little wind
useless عديم الفائدة	we can't use it
ungrateful ناكر للجميل	don't thank others for doing something good
comfortable مريح	it's nice to sit on or wear
a meeting point نقطة التقاء/تجمع	somewhere where people meet



Study the following

1. Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land.
   - كان يوجد شجرة كبيرة الحجم والعمر فى يوم حار وجاف.
2. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches.
   - كان جذعها (الشجرة) عريض جدًا ولديها الكثير من الفروع الخضراء.
3. It was a meeting point for traders.
   - كانت نقطة (مكان) لقاء للتجار.



4. They enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze.
- استمتعوا بالظل والنسيم الرائع.

5. As they were exhausted, they soon fell asleep.
- بمجرد أن شعروا بالتعب الشديد، خلدوا إلى النوم في الحال.

6. There are no nuts or fruit on its branches.
- لا يوجد مكسرات أو فواكهة في فروعها.

7. You came to me feeling hot and tired.
- اتيت إلى وأنت تشعر بالحر والإرهاق.

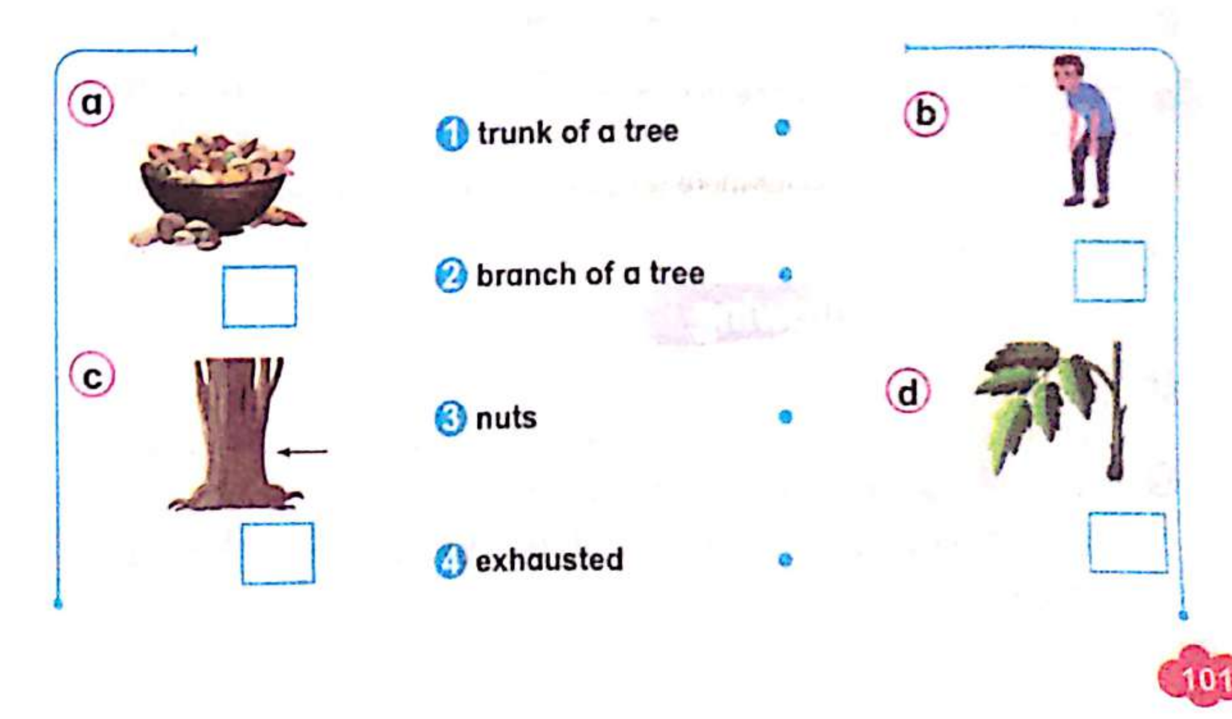
8. I gave you a cool, comfortable place to sleep and I probably saved your life.
- اعطيتك مكان مريح ورائع للنوم وربما انقذت حياتك.

9. The travelers looked around them and saw the tree was correct and felt very sorry.
- نظر المسافرون حولهم ورأوا أن الشجرة على حق وشعروا بالندم.

10. It's important to give value to the small things in our lives.
- من المهم أن نعطى قيمة للأشياء الصغيرة فى حياتنا.

1 Match the words to the photos. Check in a dictionary:

صل الكلمات بالصور. تأكد من القاموس:



2 Read and listen to a fable by Aesop. Why was the tree angry?

اقرأ واستمع إلى اسطورة خرافية كتبها "إيسوب". لماذا كانت الشجرة غاضبة؟



استمع إلى النص:

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches[1]. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave shelter[2] and rest [3] to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country.

It was near four towns and many villages in its area[4] and was a meeting point[5] for traders.

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some shade[6]." "That's a very good idea," said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze[7]. As they were exhausted[8], they soon fell asleep.

When they woke up[9], one of the travelers felt hungry. Neither of them[10] had any food in their bags so they looked up at the branches of the tree. "This tree is useless[11]," one of them said. "It has no food for us - there are no nuts[12] or fruit on its branches." "But it has shade and it's keeping us cool," said the other.

But the tree heard the first traveler's words and it was angry. "How can you be so ungrateful[13]?" It said, "You came to me feeling hot and tired. I gave you a cool, comfortable[14] place to sleep and I probably[15] saved[16] your life. Look, there is no other cool place to sleep near here. "The travelers looked around them and saw the tree was correct[17] and felt very sorry.

Arabic Meaning

١- افرع
٢- ماوي
٣- راحة
٤- منطقة
٥- مكان للتجمع
٦- ظل
٧- نسيم
٨- منهك
٩- استيقظ
١٠- ولا واحد منهم
١١- عديم الفائدة
١٢- مكسرات
١٣- ناكر الجميل
١٤- مريح
١٥- من المحتمل
١٦- انقذ
١٧- صحيح

3 Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false sentences in your notebook:

حدد إذا كانت الجمل صحيحة أو خاطئة. صحح الجمل الخاطئة فى كراستك:

1. The tree was in a field with many other trees. F
2. It was a cool, rainy day.
3. The travelers were tired.
4. The travelers were thirsty.
5. Both the travelers were ungrateful to the tree.
6. In the end the travelers were sad about being unkind to the tree.



4 Look at the underlined words in the story. Circle the correct definition:
انظر إلى الكلمات التي تحتها خط في القصة. وضع دائرة حول التعريف الصحيح:

1. A breeze is a little **wind** / **lake.**
2. When something is useless, we **can / can't** use it.
3. When someone is ungrateful, they **thank / don't thank** others for doing something good.
4. When something is comfortable, it's **nice / not nice** to sit on or wear.
5. A meeting point is somewhere where people **leave / meet**.

5 Work in pairs. Answer the questions.
اعمل في ثنائيات. اجب عن الأسئلة:

1. **What do you think the moral of the story is?**

   في رأيك ما الدرس الأخلاقي في القصة؟

   a It's important to plant lots of trees.

   b It's important to give value to the small things in our lives.

   c It's important to take food when you travel.

2. **What do you think the travelers said to the tree at the end?**

   في رأيك ماذا قال المسافرين للشجرة في النهاية؟

6 Work in pairs. Answer the questions. Use the photos below to help you with your answers:
اعمل في ثنائيات. أجب عن الأسئلة. استخدام الصور بالأسفل لتساعدك في إجابتك.

1. Why are trees important for humans?

----

2. Why are trees important for animals?

----

3. Why is it important to plant trees?








Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Hisham could .... at five.

   a talk b sleep c move d run

2. Nabil is two years .... than Hisham.

   a bigger b older c younger d longer

3. Hisham can use a computer and play ....

   a tennis b chess c games d football

4. Now, Nabil can .... and sing.

   a swim b play c read d speak

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A breeze is a little ....

   a rain b wind c lake d light

2. A meeting .... is somewhere where people meet.

   a line b chart c point d time

3. He was ...., so he fell asleep.

   a exhausted b ungrateful c unlucky d impossible

4. Bats .... fly very fast at night.

   a couldn't b can't c can d shouldn't

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم اجب عن الأسئلة:

My name's Nadia. I have two brothers and a sister. When we were children, we could do many things. My brothers Adel and Walid could play football. I could play the piano.

My sister, Soha could run. Walid couldn't do his homework. I helped him. My mother could cook delicious food, but we couldn't cook any food. Now we grow up and we can cook all kinds of food and help our mother.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nadia has ....

   a no sisters b a sister c three sisters d two sisters

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة



2. .... couldn't do homework.

a Nadia b Walid c Adel d Soha

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence. ....

4. Could Nadia play the piano? ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. rested - under - They - tree - the. ....
2. couldn't - speak - We - German. ....
3. ungrateful - be - How - so - can - you? ....
4. trees - for - Why - humans - are - important?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. When I was four, I .... (can't) use a computer.
2. Last year, I .... (can) play tennis.
3. Now, Hoda .... (could) run very quickly.
4. .... (Can) you speak when you were ten months?
5. Nabil couldn't .... (speaks) Italian.
6. I .... (could to) help my little sister with her homework.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i couldn't take the bus ....

7 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Things you could do when you were Little

Guiding phrases

talk with my parents - run very fast

....

....

....





Lesson 3 ⭑ This is so interesting



Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

Arsenal	ارسنال (نادى انجليزى)	famous	مشهور
relax	يسترخى	excellent	ممتاز
ring	يرن	professional	محترف
		clear	واضح



Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 Suffix اللاحقة (-er)

◉ نضيف (-er) إلى نهاية الكلمة أو الفعل لتكوين الاسم:

Word الكلمة		Noun الاسم	
teach	يدرس	teacher	مدرس
read	يقرأ	reader	قارئ
farm	مزرعة	farmer	فلاح
football	كرة القدم	footballer	لاعب كرة قدم
travel	يسافر	traveler	مسافر
climb	يتسلق	climber	متسلق

2 Adjectives end with (ing) - (ed) صفات تنتهي بـ (ed) أو بـ (ing)

◉ نضيف (ing) أو (ed) إلى نهاية الفعل لتكوين الصفة.

◉ إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) يحذف ونضيف (ing) أو (ed).

◉ لاحظ الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (ed) توصف الشئ أو الشخص الذى يتأثر أو يشعر بالصفة أما الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (ing) تصف الشيء أو الشخص الذى يسبب الصفة.

Verbs أفعال		Adjectives with (ed) صفات تنتهي بـ (ed)		Adjectives with (ing) صفات تنتهي بـ (ing)	
annoy	يزعج	annoyed	منزعج	annoying	مزعج
amaze	يندهش	amazed	مندهش	amazing	مدهش
interest	يهتم	interested	مهتم	interesting	شيق
tire	يُتعب	tired	مُتعَب	tiring	مُتعِب
surprise	يندهش	surprised	مندهش	surprising	مفاجئ

1 Listen and repeat the words: استمع وردد الكلمات :

2 Listen again and write the (er) words: استمع مرة أخرى واكتب الكلمات بـ (er) :



❶ 

❷ 

❸ 

t.................. r.................. c..................

❹ 

❺ 

❻ 

f.................. f.................. t..................

3 Complete the sentences with words from Exercise 2:

أكمل الجمل بكلمات من التمرين رقم ٢ :

1. My grandfather was a great .... He traveled to many great places around the world.
2. A famous Egyptian .... in England is Mohamed Elneny - he plays for Arsenal.
3. My favorite ....is Miss Salwa. She's very friendly and kind in the classroom.
4. My cousin is a very good .... He reads about 20 books a year.

4 Add (-ed) and (-ing) to the verbs to make adjectives:

أضف (ing) أو (ed) للأفعال لتكوين الصفات،

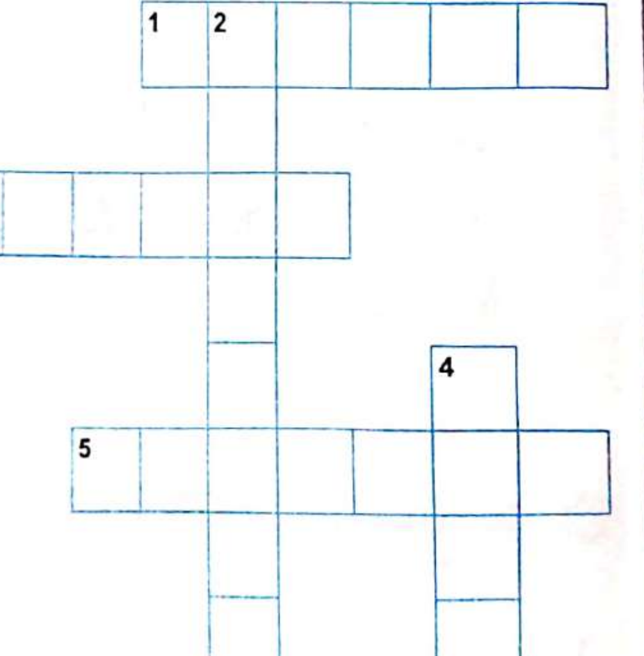
1. annoy → annoyed , annoying
2. amaze → .... , ...
3. interest → .... , ...
4. tire → .... , ...
5. surprise → .... , ...

5 Complete the crossword with words from Exercises 1 - 4

أكمل الكلمات المتقاطعة بالكلمات من التمارين ١ - ٤،

Across:

1. Mr Mahmoud is an excellent .... He plants the best tomatoes in town!
3. That long walk was very .... I can't wait to get home and relax!
5. My uncle's a professional .... He goes up some very high mountains.



Down:

2. I find my phone really .... when it rings while I'm sleeping.
4. Mr Eissa is a great.................. . He makes everything clear in our lessons.



Lesson 3




استمع إلى الكلمات،

- لاحظ نطق حرفي (Vv) / (Ww) من الأصوات التي تهتز فيها الأحبال الصوتية (voiced sound) حيث تضع يديك علي الحنجرة وتشعر باهتزاز عند نطقهم.



1 Listen and circle the word you hear. Then listen again and check:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي تسمعها. ثم استمع مرة أخرى وتأكد،

استمع إلى الكلمات أخر الكتاب ،

1.	west	vest	2.	wheel	whale	3.	vase	vest
4.	vet	wet	5.	violin	volcano	6.	water	winter

2 Listen and write the words:

استمع واكتب الكلمات:





استمع إلى الكلمات آخر الكتاب

1. .... 2. .... 3. ....

4. .... 5. .... 6. ....

7. .... 8. .... 9. ....

3 Listen and write. Then listen again and check:

استمع واكتب. ثم استمع مرة أخرى وتأكد:



استمع إلى النص آخر الكتاب

Last ❶.................... I decided(1) to travel ❷.................... in my boat wearing my ❸.................... . I was looking for a ❹.................... but I had some problems(2). I met some ❺.................... and they turned over(3) my boat. I had to sit on my ❻.................... to stay afloat(4)! I ate ❼.................... to stay healthy and I came to shore(5). I didn't find the ❽.................... , but I met some vets and they took me home to my ❾....................!

Arabic Meaning

١- قرر
٢-مشكلات
٣- قلبوا
٤- يبقى عائماً
٥- الشاطئ

4 Listen and repeat the tongue twister. Can you say it quickly:

استمع وردد الكلمات أو الجمل التى تسبب تنافر أو تلعثم اللسان. هل تستطيع أن تقولها بسرعة؟

- يقصد بـ (tongue twister) تنافر أو تلعثم اللسان من أجل توضيح مدى السرعة التي يمكنك بها التحدث بمجموعة من الكلمات لها نفس الحروف والتي يصعب نطقها معًا في جملة واحدة.



Waleed made vases on very wet wheels for vets.

صنع وليد زهريات على عجلات مبللة للأطباء البيطريين.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My brother is wearing a blue ....

a vest b west c wheel d vase

2. My favorite season is the ....

a water b winter c volcano d watermelon

3. My uncle is a professional .... He goes up some very high mountains.

a climbing b climber c climbed d climbs

4. The history of Egypt is so ....

a interested b interesting c interest d interests

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

wore - van - village - vet - wet

My uncle is a vet. He lives in a ❶ .... Yesterday, he woke up early and ❷ .... his vest. He saw a ❸ .... cat in the street. He took it and put it in his ❹ .... He gave it water and food. The cat was very happy.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم اجب عن الأسئلة:

My grandfather could do many things when he was young. He went to the library once a week. He was a good reader. He read about 30 books every year. He could also climb very high mountains. He was a great traveler. He traveled to many places around the world. When I grow up, I want to be like my grandfather.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandfather could climb high ....

a places b walls c mountains d trees

2. My grandfather read about .... books every year.

a thirteen b thirty c sixty d three

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did the grandfather go to the library?

----

4. Where did the grandfather travel?

----

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. got - home - relax - I - to.

----

2. four - The - has - wheels - car.

----

3. interested - I'm - history - very - in.

----

4. professional - My - climber - is - uncle - a.

----

5. kind - your - friendly - teacher - Is - and?

----

6. makes - clear - Who - everything - lessons - in?

----

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This school trip was very .... (tired).
2. I'm too .... (interest) in playing chess.
3. The movie I saw yesterday was .... (amaze).
4. History is so .... (interested).

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

- do you like eating watermelons



★ Writing & Project





استمع إلى المفردات:

Key vocabulary

nickname	اسم الشهرة / لقب / كناية
sea cow	بقرة البحر
sea bed	قاع البحر
infographic	مخطط معلومات بياني
unusual animal	حيوان غير مألوف (غريب)
dugong	الأطوم (بقر البحر) (حيوان بحري كبير الحجم من فصيلة الثدييات)



Other words كلمات أخرى

bison	ثور امريكى
warm	دافيء
cool	بارد
percent	نسبة مئوية
surface	سطح
eagle	طائر العقاب
wolf	ذئب
email	بريد إلكترونى
cute	جميل
basketball	كرة السلة
note	ملاحظة
habitat	بيئة الحيوان أو النبات
polar	قطبى
grassland	ارض عشبية

Writing an email كتابة الإيميل

تذكر أن:

١. عند كتابة الإيميل نبدأ بـ: From + اسم المرسل

ثم تكتب: To + اسم المرسل إليه

٢. نبدأ الإيميل بكلمات (عزيزي Dear) أو (أهلا Hi) ثم اسم المرسل إليه.

٣. ثم تقول لماذا تكتب الإيميل باستخدام عبارات مثل:

- Just a quick note مجرد ملحوظة سريعة
- Thanks for writing to me. شكرًا للكتابة لي.

٤. أعطي فكرة عن الموضوع ثم توسع في شرحه.

٥. عندما تكتب لصديقك استخدم لغة غيررسمية مثل:

- اختصارات مثل: I'm - / كلمات مثل: awesome / cool.
- عبارات مثل: How's life? / How are things?

٦. اختم الإيميل بعبارات مثل:

- Write soon. أكتب لى فى أقرب وقت.
- Hope to hear from you soon. أتمنى أن اعرف أخبارك قريباً.
- See you soon. اراك قريباً.
- All the best. كل الأمنيات الطيبة.
- Bye for now. إلى اللقاء.

٧. ثم تكتب إسمك.

Study the following

1. I play on a team once a week.
   - العب في الفريق مرة في الأسبوع.
2. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong.
   - الأطوم حيواني المفضل وغير المألوف في مصر.
3. It's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute.
   - لديه وجه اليف و محبوب وهو حيوان رائع جدًا.
4. Its nickname is the sea cow.
   - اسم الشهرة هو بقرة البحر.
5. It spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.
   - يقضي ساعات طويلة يأكل العشب من قاع البحر كل يوم.

1 Read Amir's email. What's his favorite unusual animal?

اقرأ إيميل أمير. ما الحيوان غير المألوف لديه؟

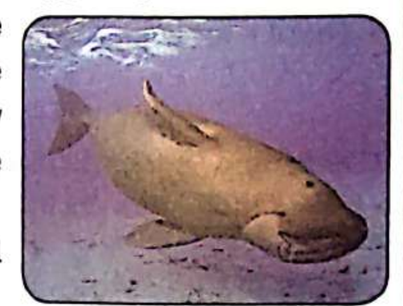
استمع إلى النص :

From: Amir
To: Tamer
Subject: Unusual animals

New Message

Dear Tamer,

Thanks for your email. How are things? It was really interesting to hear about the sports you like. I love basketball, and I play on a team once a week.
This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong - can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.
What about you? What's your favorite unusual animal? Write back and let me know.
Hope to hear from you soon!
Amir



dugong

Send

2 Read again and answer True (T) or False (F):

اقرأ النص السابق مرة أخرى وأجب بـ (False) أو (True):

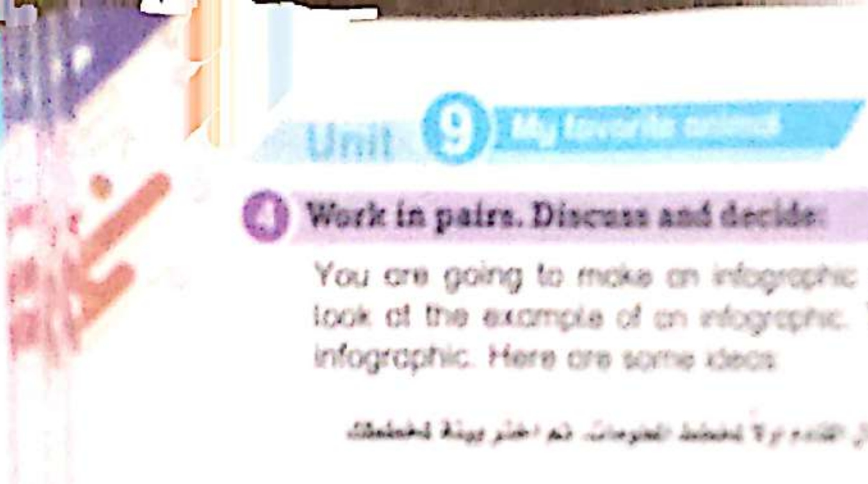
1. Tamer called Amir and they talked about sports.
2. Amir doesn't like sports.
3. Amir wants to talk about wildlife.
4. He sends a photo to Tamer.
5. Amir says that dugongs are also called sea cows.
6. He wants Tamer to write back.

3 Complete the email phrases:

أكمل عبارات الإيميل:

things - note - best - soon

1. See you .... !
2. How are .... ?
3. Just a quick ....
4. All the ....



4 Work in pairs. Discuss and decide:

You are going to make an infographic about an animal habitat. First, look at the example of an infographic. Then choose a habitat for your infographic. Here are some ideas.

- desert
- forest
- polar
- ocean



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

1. I watched a programme about .... animals.

   a strange　b sea　c farm　d wild

2. The dugong is very ....

   a cute　b ugly　c boring　d strong

3. The dugong's nickname is the sea ....

   a crab　b cow　c fish　d star

4. The dugong spends many hours eating .... from the sea bed.

   a grass　b plants　c flowers　d small fish

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً

1. email - your - Thanks - for.

----

2. you - photo - Can - the - see?

----

3. nickname - the sea - Its - cow - is.

----

4. eats - the sea - The dugong - bed - grass - from.

----

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس

1. This week, we're .... (talk) about unusual animals.
2. The dugong has got a lovely .... (friend) face.
3. I .... (playing) on a team once a week.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى

does Amir like sports --

Help your child deal with such questions.　ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



Review

Animals الحيوانات



kangaroo حيوان الكُنغر



panda الباندا



bat خفاش



lion أسد



penguin بطريق



dolphin دولفين



snail حلزون



parrot ببغاء

Other words كلمات أخرى



busy	مشغول
German	اللغة الألمانية
use a computer	يستخدم كمبيوتر
play chess	يلعب الشطرنج
nuts	مكسرات
exhausted	منهك (متعب جدًا)
branch of a tree	فرع شجرة
trunk of a tree	جذع الشجرة
wide	واسع - عريض
famous	مشهور
shelter	مأوى
rest	يستريح
comfortable	مريح

relax	يسترخي
save	ينقذ
shade	ظل
traders	تجار
meeting point	مكان للتجمع
breeze	نسيم (رياح خفيف)
useless	بلا فائدة
ungrateful	ناكر الجميل
dugong	الأطوم
sea cow	بقرة البحر
nickname	اسم الشهرة / لقب / كناية
sea bed	قاع البحر
unusual animal	حيوان غير مألوف (غريب)
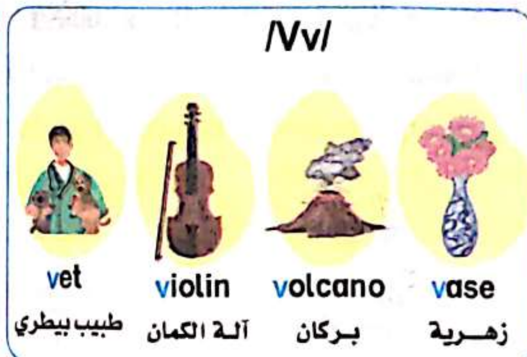


Ww Vv

- لاحظ نطق حرفي (Vv) / (Ww) من الأصوات التي تهتز فيها الأحبال الصوتية (voiced sound) حيث تضع يديك على الحنجرة وتشعر باهتزاز عند نطقهم.

/Ww/				/Vv/			
winter	wheel	whale	watermelon	vet	violin	volcano	vase
الشتاء	عجلة (اطارسيارة)	حوت	بطيخة	طبيب بيطري	آلة الكمان	بركان	زهرية







Language Focus

ملاحظات لغوية

1 للتعبير عن استطاعة فعل شيء في الحاضر نستخدم:

فاعل + can يستطيع أن + فعل في المصدر

- Birds **can** fly.

◉ في النفي نستخدم:

فاعل + can't لا يستطيع أن + فعل في المصدر

- Pandas **can't** drive a car.

◉ في السؤال نستخدم:

Can + فاعل + inf فعل في المصدر?

- **Can** you play tennis?

◉ لاحظ لا نضع (to) بعد can / can't

2 للتعبير عن استطاعة فعل شيء في الماضي نستخدم:

◉ في الاثبات:

فاعل + could + inf فعل في المصدر.

- I **could** run fast last year.

◉ في النفي:

فاعل + couldn't + inf فعل في المصدر.

- I **couldn't** take the bus so I had to walk.

◉ في السؤال:

Could + فاعل + inf فعل في المصدر?

- **Could** you play the piano last year?

◉ لاحظ لا نضع (to) بعد could / couldn't

When عندما + جملة في زمن الماضي البسيط + فاعل + could استطاع / couldn't لم يستطع + فعل في المصدر

- When I **was** five, I **could** speak English.
- When she **was** a baby, she **couldn't** walk.



Write a text of THIRTY (30) words

Lesson 1

My trip to a wildlife park

1. Yesterday, I went to the wildlife park. I went with my family in my father's car. The animals were amazing. I saw the little kangaroos could sit inside their mom's pouch. There were beautiful parrots. They could talk and say some words.

Lesson 2

Things you could do when you were little

2. When I was little, I could talk with my parents. I could play with my toys. I couldn't walk. When I was six, I could run very fast. My mother helped me to do a lot of things.

Activity 3 - Unit 9

The bats

3. Bats fly at night. They are all hiding. We can't see them in the dark. They sleep upside down on trees. They are black. I don't like them. But my teacher wants me to do a project about them.

Al- Azhar Exercises



الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع واختر:

1. I like .... (animals - birds - insects)
2. The parrot can .... (swim - talk - read)
3. I say some words for it to .... (sing - think - repeat)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بالكلمات في الأسفل:

see - animals - go - park

A : Where did you ---------------------------- last weekend?

B : I went to the new wildlife ---------------------------- .

A : What did you ----------------------------?

B : I saw some unusual ---------------------------- .

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الاسئلة التالية:

This week we're talking about unusual animals at school. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong. It's got lovely friendly face and it's very cute. Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

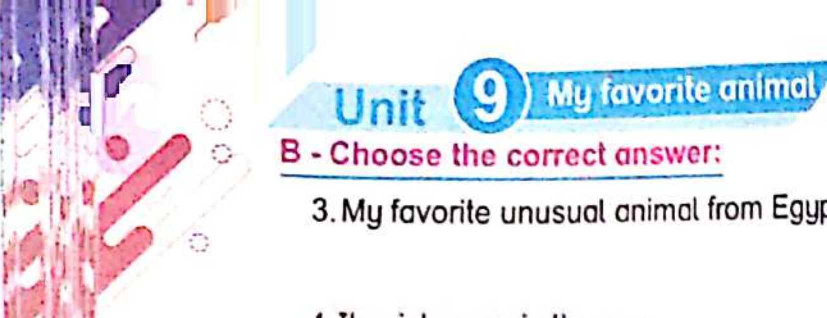
A- Answer the following questions:

1. What are we talking about this week?

----

2. Where's the unusual animal from?

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



B - Choose the correct answer:

3. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the ....
(elephant - dugong -

4. Its nickname is the sea ....
(fish - whale -

5. It spends many hours eating .... from the sea bed every day.
(meat - rice -

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. It's important to .... lots of trees.
   a sleep b meet c plant
2. A .... can jump on two legs.
   a snake b snail c kangaroo
3. My favorite .... is Miss Fatma. She is kind in the classroom.
   a vet b doctor c teacher
4. Sorry, I .... help you with your homework. I'm busy.
   a can b can't c could
5. I .... speak French when I lived in France.
   a can b can't c could

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. live - Snails - shells - can - in.

- -

2. is - a little - A breeze - wind.

- -

3. plant - Is - trees - it - important - to?

- -

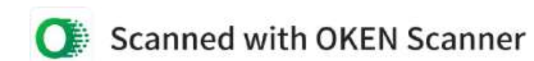
4. you - Could - use - computer - a?

- -

5. see - in - I - bats - the dark - couldn't.

- -

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.









1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. The penguin lives in the ....
   a park b ocean c forest d wildlife
2. The penguin is a .... animal.
   a lazy b slow c friendly d useless
3. The penguin swims in a .... with his family.
   a school b group c team d class
4. The .... teacher was very happy about the project.
   a math b Arabic c English d science

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Nabil is .... , he doesn't thank others for doing something good.
   a bored b ungrateful c useless d comfortable
2. A .... lives in China and eats bamboo.
   a parrot b panda c penguin d bat
3. My sister is good at playing the ....
   a vest b violin c volcano d vase
4. Mr Saleh travels around the world. He's a great ....
   a traveling b traveled c traveler d travels

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

nickname - talks - unusual - spends - cute

I'm doing research about the dugong. It's an 1 .... sea animal. It's very 2 .... Its 3 .... is the sea cow. It 4 .... many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة

Yesterday, we had a science lesson about the wildlife. It was an awesome lesson. Then, my teacher Miss Rasha asked us to make an infographic about the forest habitat. All the class collected some ideas about the life and animals in the forest. We drew some pictures of interesting animals like kangaroos, parrots and bats. My favorites were the parrots. They are so wonderful. They can talk and repeat words. I want to keep a parrot at home. That sounds amazing.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة



A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about the .... habitat.

a desert b forest c grassland d ocean

2. Miss Rasha asked us to make a/an .... about the forest.

a lesson b project c infographic d email

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What can parrots do? --

4. How was the science lesson? --

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. feed - my - I've - rabbit - got - to. --

2. swim - Could - year - Hany - last? --

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We .... (Can) use a computer last year.

2. My friend asked me a .... (surprised) question.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

the dolphin swims in the ocean --

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

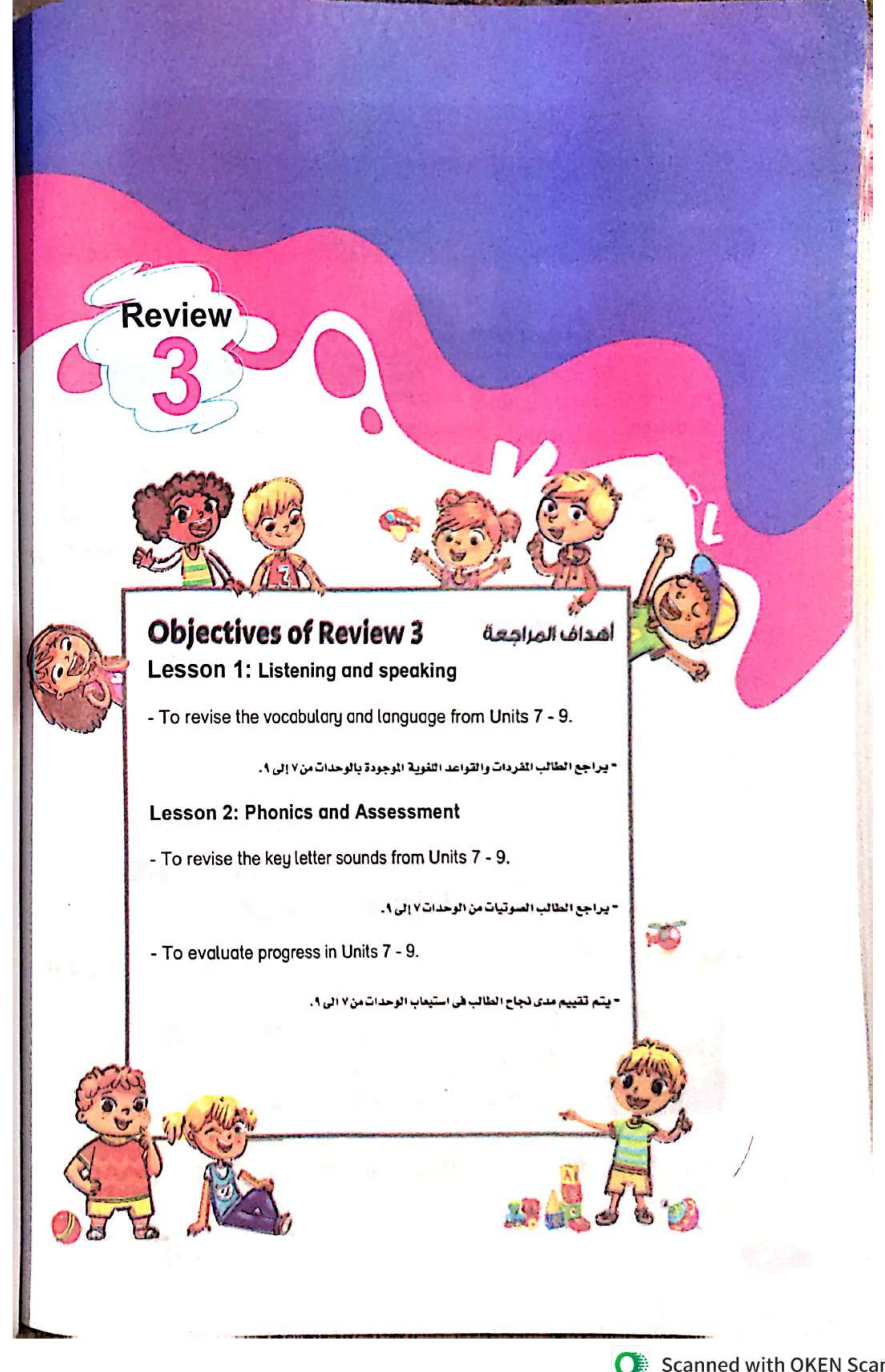
مجاب آخر الوحدة

The bats

Guiding questions

1- When do bats fly?
2- How do bats sleep?





Review 3

Objectives of Review 3

أهداف المراجعة

Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 7 - 9.

- يراجع الطالب المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ٧ إلى ٩.

Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 7 - 9.

- يراجع الطالب الصوتيات من الوحدات ٧ إلى ٩.

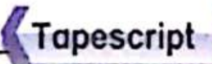
- To evaluate progress in Units 7 - 9.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح الطالب فى استيعاب الوحدات من ٧ الى ٩.



Lesson 1 ★ Units 7, 8 & 9

1 Listen and point: استمع وأشر





Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى المفردات

1- clock	6- kangaroo	11- dugong
2- cough	7- headache	12- panda
3- bat	8- balcony	14- oven
4- closet	9- lion	15- toothache
5- dolphin	10- shoulder	16- parrot

Start







1- clock 2- ______ 3- ______ 4- ______ 5- ______







10- ______ 9- ______ 8- ______ 7- ______ 6- ______







11- ______ 12- ______ 13- ______ 14- ______ 15- ______

Finish

2 Look and write:

أنظر واكتب (كالمثال):

- اكتب جمل عن الصور السابقة في Ex.1:

3 Play and say:

العب وقل:

4 Complete the sentences using the words in the box:

أكمل الجمل مستخدماً الكلمات فى القائمة:

unhappy - unsafe - uncomfortable - unfriendly

1. I'm glad Mom and Dad didn't buy that couch - it was really uncomfortable.
2. She's very ________ because she lost her homework.
3. We all thought the new girl was ________, but actually she just didn't talk much.
4. That electrical wire looks very ________ - don't touch it!

5 Complete the text about Injy's day in Alexandria with the verbs in the regular and irregular past simple form:

أكمل النص عن يوم إنجى فى الأسكندرية باستخدام الأفعال المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة فى زمن الماضى البسيط:

I had (have) a lovely day yesterday. I ❷ ________ (travel) to Alexandria with my mom to see my aunt. We ❸ ________ (go) by train. I love trains!

When we ❹ ________ (arrive), we ❺ ________ (rush) straight to my aunt's house. She ❻ ________ (give) us a delicious lunch. After lunch, my aunt ❼ ________ (take) us to the Corniche. The sea ❽ ________ (be) really beautiful.

6 Complete the sentences about the rest of Injy's day in Exercise 5. Check (√) the sentences with irregular verbs:

أكمل النص عن باقى يوم إنجى فى التمرين ٥. ضع علامة صح أمام الجمل التى تحتوى على أفعال غير منتظمة:

1- We drank (drink) juice at a café in the square. (√)
2- Then we ________ (drive) to the market and ________ (buy) a present for a friend. ( )
3- We ________ (have) a great time. ( )
4- I nearly ________ (miss) the train home! ( )
5- I ________ (sleep) all the way back home. ( )



★ Units 7, 8 & 9

1 Label the photos with the words in the box:

ضع الكلمة المناسبة من القائمة تحت الصورة الخاصة بها:

backache - cough - earache - headache - sore throat - toothache

❶ 

headache

❷ 
----

❸ 
----

❹ 
----

❺ 
----

❻ 
----

2 Put the dialog in the correct order. Listen, check, and repeat. Then act it out in pairs:

رتب المحادثة. استمع وتأكد وكرر ثم قم بالادوار فى ثنائيات:



Nurse : Come in, Kareem. What's the matter? (1)

Kareem: Thank you, nurse. (   )

Nurse : Oh dear. Did you hit your ear with a ball? (   )

Kareem: I have an earache. (   )

Nurse : Let me see. Yes, it is red inside. I think you should go home. I'll telephone your mom. (   )

Kareem: No, I had an earache when I woke up this morning. (   )

3 Listen then write the words you hear. Then match the words and pictures:

استمع ثم اكتب الكلمات التى تسمعها. ثم صل الكلمات بالصور.

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1- panda
2- p ....
3- d ....
4- r ....
5- s ....
6- w ....

4 Complete the sentences with could or couldn't:

أكمل النص باستخدام could أو couldn't.

1. I couldn't speak when I was one month old.
2. I ______ ride a bike when I was a baby.
3. Waleed ______ read when he was 6. He loves reading!
4. Amira ______ write until she went to school.
5. Tamer's brother ______ drive at 20 - he passed his driving test at 18.
6. I ______ play a guitar at seven. My dad taught me.

5 Complete the crossword with the -er words:

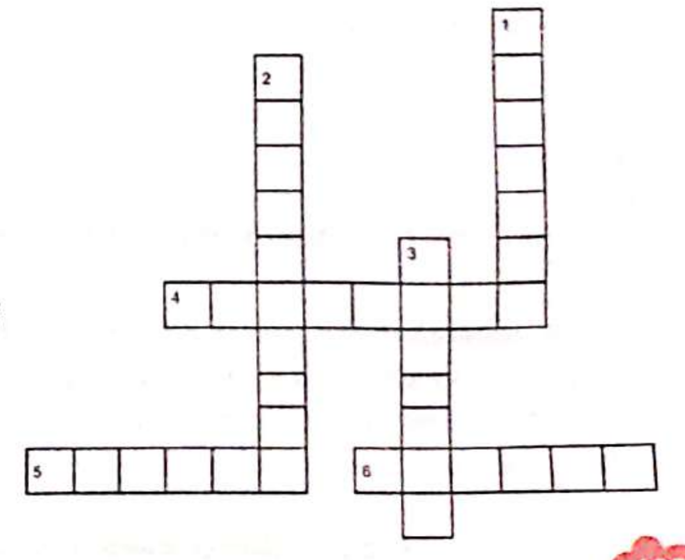
أكمل الكلمات المتقاطعة باستخدام كلمات تنتهى بـ er.

Down

1. Someone who helps you in the classroom.
2. Someone who plays a famous sport with a ball.
3. Someone who goes up mountains using a rope.

Across

4. Someone who travels to a lot of places.
5. Someone who grows food for us.
6. Someone who reads a lot.



on Units (7,8 & 9)

Activity



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Fatma lives in ....
   a Cairo   b Aswan   c Giza   d Luxor
2. Fatma's parents moved to a .... apartment.
   a smaller   b closer   c longer   d wider
3. There are four .... in the new apartment.
   a rooms   b beds   c cushions   d armchairs
4. They have .... in the living room.
   a closet   b television   c balcony   d gift

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I had a/an .... and I can't hear well.
   a backache   b headache   c toothache   d earache
2. That long road is very ...., I can't walk.
   a tiring   b comfortable   c interesting   d amazing
3. Ancient Egyptians used .... to make bricks.
   a papyrus   b mats   c mud   d wood
4. When we have a headache, we take ....
   a sunscreen   b pills   c bandages   d bacteria

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

fields - cool - sell - unfair - shade

Trees are important in our life. They give us food and 1 .... When we sit under the tree on hot days, we feel 2 .... Farmers plant more trees in their 3 .... They get a lot of fruit from these trees and 4 .... them at the market.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My sister Dina is a pupil in primary five. She likes helping **patients**. She wants to be a nurse when she grows up. On the summer holiday, she goes to the hospital near her house. The doctors and nurses like her. They teach her how to change bandages and give injections. She helps them at the hospital. She buys books about medicine, too.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة



A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Dina wants to be a .... when she grows up.

   a) vet b) doctor c) nurse d) patient

2. The underlined word "**patients**" means .... people.

   a) sick b) healthy c) helpful d) useful

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Dina learn from doctors and nurses? --------------------

4. Where does Dina go on the summer holiday? --------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. tortoise - very - Can - fast - run? --------------------

2. important - food - eat - to - healthy - It's. --------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We drove to the shop and ---------- (buy) a gift for my mother.

2. Don't touch this electric wire. It's ---------- (safe).

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

could you play the guitar --------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

"Your favorite animal"

Fact file

Food	Bamboo
color	black and white





Theme 2

Being responsible

Unit 10

Let's visit Egypt

هيا نزور مصر







Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about places in a town.
   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الأماكن الموجودة بالمدينة.
2. Practice using the imperative to tell someone to do or not to do something and to give directions.
   - يتدرب الطالب على استخدام صيغة الأمر لإخبار شخص ما بفعل شيء ما أو عدم فعله وإعطاء الإتجاهات.
3. Practice using questions and short answers.
   - يتدرب الطالب على استخدام صيغة الأسئلة والإجابات القصيرة.
4. Read and say words with diphthongs.
   - يقرأ الطالب ويقول الكلمات التي تحتوي على ادغام.
5. Estimate with mental math.
   - يقوم الطالب بالتقدير باستخدام الرياضيات الذهنية.
6. Write a paragraph about my town.
   - يكتب الطالب فقرة إنشائية عن مدينته.
7. Make a poster about my perfect town.
   - يصنع الطالب ملصقًا عن مدينته المثالية.







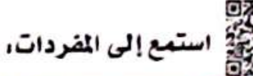




We Love Alexandria!




Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات،



bank بنك

factory مصنع

monument نُصب تذكاري / أثر



library مكتبة



shopping mall مول تجاري

Places
الأماكن




square ميدان



station محطة



museum متحف



market سوق



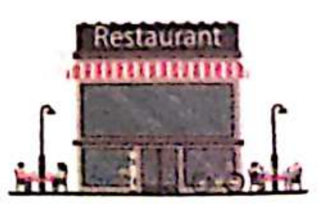
beach شاطئ



supermarket سوبر ماركت



hotel فندق



restaurant مطعم

mint tea	شاي بالنعناع
local cuisine	مأكولات / أطباق محلية
spend ages	يقضي الكثير من الوقت

originally	في الأصل
on vacation	في إجازة





Countries, Cities and towns



Countries	دول
Egypt	مصر
England	إنجلترا
Germany	ألمانيا

Cities & towns	مدن كبيرة وصغيرة
Alexandria	الإسكندرية
Fayoum	الفيوم
Cairo	القاهرة
Barcelona	برشلونة

◉ جميع أسماء الدول والمدن تبدأ بحرف capital.



Other words كلمات أخرى

stores	متاجر / محلات
tourist	سائح
roof garden	حديقة فوق السطح
chatting	دردشة
relaxing	مريح
excellent	ممتاز
culture	حضارة / ثقافة
yet	حتى الآن
exciting	مثير / رائع
ingredients	مكونات الطعام

friendly	ودود
the Pyramids	الأهرامات
school trip	رحلة مدرسية
traditional food	طعام تقليدي
fresh	طازج
modern buildings	مباني حديثة
traditions	تقاليد
shopping	التسوق
swimming	السباحة
mix of	مزيج / خليط من

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
serve	يقدم طعام	served
remind	يُذكّر	reminded
own	يملك	owned

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
think	يعتقد	thought
go	يذهب	went
find out	يكتشف	found out
see	يرى	saw

Study the following

1. **Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit.** الإسكندرية مكان مثير حقًا للزيارة.
2. **There's a lot to see and do here!** هناك الكثير لرؤيته والقيام به هنا!
3. **I love just sitting in the roof garden of my hotel.** أحب الجلوس في الحديقة التى على سطح الفندق.
4. **I love drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people.** أحب شُرب الشاي المصري بالنعناع الحلو المذاق والدردشة مع الآخرين.
5. **I've lived in Alexandria all my life.** لقد عشت في الإسكندرية طوال حياتي.
6. **You must visit my restaurant to try some of the local cuisine.** يجب أن تزور مطعمي لتتذوّق بعض الطعام المحلي.
7. **We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients.** نقدم الطعام المصري التقليدي باستخدام مكوّنات محلية طازجة لذيذة.
8. **I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market.** أفضل شراء مكونات طعامى من السوق.
9. **We spend ages walking around them.** نقضي الكثير من الوقت في التجول حولهم.
10. **I'm Egyptian, originally from Cairo.** أنا مصري، في الأصل من القاهرة.
11. **My favorite place is the beach.** المكان المفضل لدي هو الشاطئ.
12. **I'm on vacation here from Barcelona.** أنا في إجازة هنا قادماً من برشلونة.
13. **I love the mix of modern and old buildings.** أحب المزيج بين المباني الحديثة والقديمة.
14. **I like to find out about the culture and traditions.** أحب التعرف على الثقافة والتقاليد.
15. **There's a really big station in my town.** هناك بالفعل محطة كبيرة في بلدتي.

1 Listen and read: Who is from Alexandria? استمع واقرأ. من مدينته الإسكندرية؟

استمع إلى النص.



Why we love Alexandria!

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach! We asked some people who live there and tourists what they think ...

Arabic Meaning
١- حتي الآن
٢- الحديقة فوق السطح
٣- شاي بالنعناع
٤- مريح

Jens: I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. I think it's really cool here. I think there are some good museums, but I haven't been to any **yet** (1). I love just sitting in the **roof garden**(2) of my hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian **mint tea**(3) and chatting to other people. It's very **relaxing** (4).



Unit 10 Let's visit Egypt



Hanan: I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the **local cuisine** (5). We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have **excellent** (6) supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my **ingredients** (7) at the market in the old town.

Kira and Lena: We're from a small town in England. The **stores** (8) aren't very good there. That's what we love most about Alexandria — the shopping malls! We **spend ages** (9) walking around them. We like the people. They are so **friendly** (10)!

Karim: I'm Egyptian, **originally** (11) from Cairo. I moved to Alexandria last year and I love it here. I work in a bank. My favorite place is the beach—there isn't one in Cairo! It can get very hot here in **summer** (12), so it's great to go there and swim.

Paulo: I'm on **vacation** (13) here from **Barcelona** (14). I like Alexandria because it reminds me of home — a big, modern city near the sea. I love the mix of modern and old **buildings** (15). Also, I like to find out about the **culture** (16) and **traditions** (17). The library is amazing!

٥- اكلات محلية
٦- ممتاز
٧- مكونات الطعام
٨- متاجر
٩- يقضي وقت كثير
١٠- ودود
١١- اصلاً/في الاصل
١٢- الصيف
١٣- عطلة
١٤- برشلونة
١٥- مباني
١٦- ثقافة/حضارة
١٧- تقاليد

2 Listen again. Circle the correct word:

استمع مرة أخرى وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Jens likes drinking tea in the **museum** / **hotel**.
2. Hanan buys her ingredients from the **supermarket** / **market**.
3. Kira and Lena like **shopping** / **swimming** in Alexandria.
4. Karim lives in **Cairo** / **Alexandria**.
5. Paulo likes Alexandria because it is like **Cairo** / **Barcelona**.

3 Listen and repeat. Then look and write:

استمع وردد. ثم انظر واكتب:

station - factory - library - monument - bank - square - shopping mall

1. 

....

2. 
....

3. 
....

4. 
....

5. 
....

6. 
....

7. 
....

4 Listen and match the places and people:

استمع وصل الأماكن بالأشخاص:



library - monument - factory - station



....

5 Look at the places in Exercise 3. Which of the places are in your town? Talk to a partner:

انظر إلى الصور فى تمرين ٣ أى من الاماكن موجودة فى مدينتك؟ تكلم مع زميلك:



There's a really big station on my town.

That's right. There's also a library.





Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Adel goes to Alexandria every ....

a year　　b month　　c day　　d week

2. Adel stays in a big ....

a bank　　b hotel　　c museum　　d park

3. Adel has lunch in a big ....

a hotel　　b restaurant　　c museum　　d beach

4. Adel goes to Alexandria with his ....

a friends　　b family　　c neighbors　　d cousins

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We buy our ingredients from the ....

a museum　　b factory　　c bank　　d market

2. Sara went to the .... to travel by train.

a stop　　b station　　c park　　d museum

3. I go to Alexandria and play on the ....

a beach　　b factory　　c umbrellas　　d shopping mall

4. I like the people of Alexandria, they are very ....

a bad　　b friendly　　c sad　　d tall

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Last summer, I went with my family to Alexandria. We went there by train. We stayed at a big hotel. In the morning, we went to the beach where I swam and played with the sand. In the afternoon, we had lunch at a nice restaurant. We visited Alexandria Library. We also went to the cinema and watched an adventure film. We had a good time in Alexandria.

(الجيزة - إدارة أبو النمرس ٢٠٢٣)

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They went to Alexandria by ....

a bus　　b car　　c foot　　d train

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



2. They went to the .... in the morning.

a beach b cinema c library d restaurant

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where did they stay?

---

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

---

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. in - from - town - We're - England - a small.

---

2. a really - place - exciting - Alexandria - to visit - is.

---

3. to - Ramy - wants - books - some - borrow.

---

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. where do you come from

---

2. i have lived in alexandria all my life.

---

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A visit to Alexandria

Guiding phrases

exciting place to visit - favorite place is the beach





Don't Run In The Library!




استمع إلى المفردات،

flower	زهرة
trash can	صندوق قمامة
environment	البيئة
trash	قمامة



Other words كلمات أخرى

Go straight	سر بشكل مباشر
Excuse me	معذرة
at the end	في نهاية
on your right	علي يمينك
on the left	على يسارك
on the right	على اليمين
librarian	أمين المكتبة
tomorrow	غداً
Park Avenue	شارع الحديقة
Alexandria Library	مكتبة الإسكندرية
moment	لحظة
everybody	الجميع
quietly	بهدوء
upstairs	الطابق العلوي
elevator	مصعد
button	زر
loudly	بصوت عالي
Main Street	الشارع الرئيسى
High street	الشارع الرئيسى



Instructions: تعليمات

Wait a moment.	انتظر لحظة.
Don't run.	لا تجري.
Walk quietly.	امشي بهدوء.
Go into the elevator.	اذهب إلى المصعد.
Stand back.	ارجع للخلف.
Push the number one button.	اضغط على الزر رقم واحد.
Keep the environment clean.	حافظ على نظافة البيئة.
Don't jump up and down.	لا تقفز لأعلى ولأسفل.
Turn right / left.	استدر يمينًا / يسارًا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
wait	ينتظر	waited
close	يغلق	closed
push	يضغط / يدفع	pushed
jump	يقفز	jumped
return	يعود	returned
turn	يستدر	turned
cross	يعبر	crossed
pick	يلتقط	picked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
stand	يقف	stood
choose	يختار	chose
bring	يحضر	brought
lose	يفقد	lost

Study the following

1. This is the Alexandria Library. هذه مكتبة الإسكندرية.
2. Can we go inside? هل يمكننا الدخول؟
3. Yes, OK. Let's go in. I'm going first! نعم حسنًا. دعنا ندخل. سأدخل أولاً!
4. This is a very important place. هذا مكان هام جدًا.
5. Can we go upstairs to the Children's Library? هل يمكننا الصعود إلى مكتبة الطفل؟
6. The doors are closing. الأبواب تغلق.
7. What book are you reading? ما الكتاب الذي تقرأه؟
8. Do not eat in the library. لا تأكل فى المكتبة.
9. Bring your book back in two weeks. أعد كتابك فى خلال أسبوعين.
10. Drink your water outside. اشرب مياهك فى الخارج.
11. Don't use your cell phone here. لا تستخدم هاتفك المحمول هنا.
12. Do not lose your book. لا تضيع كتابك.
13. Just cross the road. فقط اعبر الشارع.



Unit 10 Let's visit Egypt

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 Imperative الأمر

◉ نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء تعليمات بفعل أو عدم فعل شيء.

- اولاً الأمر المثبت.

Inf.مصدر الفعل + باقى الجملة.

- Stand up! Open the door.

◉ يمكن أن يأتى قبل الفعل كلمات تدل على الطلب المهذب أو اسم شخص:

- Please, pick up that trash.
- Ali, close the window.

- ثانيًا الأمر المنفى.

Don't / Never + infمصدر الفعل + باقى الجملة.

- Don't eat in the library, please.
- Never waste your time.

◉ لاحظ لا تبدأ الجملة الأمرية بفاعل subject ولكن تبدأ بالفعل فى المصدر:

◉ لا يأتى بعد فعل الامر حرف جر (to)

2 Giving directions إعطاء الاتجاهات

◉ للسؤال عن الاتجاهات هناك عدة طرق وهى:

1 Excuse me, how do I get to +اسم المكان?

- معذرة، كيف يمكننى أن أصل إلى.........؟

2 Is there (اسم المكان) near here?

- هل يوجد (اسم المكان) بالقرب من هنا؟

3 Where is (اسم المكان), please?

- أين يوجد (اسم المكان) من فضلك؟

- Excuse me, how do I get to the park?
- Is there a park near here?
- Where is the park, please?

◉ للاجابة على هذه الأسئلة نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء التعليمات ووصف الاتجاهات:

- Turn right. استدر يمينًا.
- Cross the road. اعبر الشارع.
- Go straight. اذهب بطول.







Listen and read. Where are the children going?

استمع واقرأ،



استمع إلى النص،

Teacher : OK, children. We're here now. This is The Alexandria Library.

Reem : Wow! It's **amazing** [1]. Can we go inside?

Teacher : Wait a **moment** [2]. Is **everybody** [3] here? Yes, OK. Let's go in.

Ali : I'm going first!

Teacher : Don't run, Ali. Walk **quietly** [4]. This is a very **important** [5] place.

Ali : I'm sorry.

Noha : Can we go **upstairs** [6] to the Children's Library?

Teacher : Yes. Go into the **elevator** [7]. Good. Stand back. The doors are closing. Don't jump up and down, Ali! Push the number one **button** [8], Tarek. Great, thank you. We're going up!

Arabic Meaning

١- رائع / مدهش
٢- لحظة
٣- الجميع
٤- بهدوء
٥- هام
٦- الطابق العلوي
٧- مصعد
٨- زر

2 Reorder the words to make imperative sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل أمرية،

1. book - Choose - a - good - to read.

   ----

2. talk - loudly, - Don't - please.

   ----

3. write - in - Don't - the book.

   ----

4. the book - Return - its place - to.

   ----

3 Read the library rules. Rewrite the rules with imperatives:

اقرأ قواعد المكتبة. أعد كتابة القواعد بالأوامر:

1. You should not eat in the library.

   Don't eat in the library!

2. You have to bring your book back in two weeks.

   --.

3. You need to drink your water outside.

   --.

4. You cannot use your cell phone here.

   --.

5. You should not lose your book.

   --.

6. You should ask the librarian if you need help

   --.

4 Use imperatives to show what you should or shouldn't do inside a park, using words from the box:

استخدم الأوامر لإظهار ما يجب أو لا يجب عليك فعله داخل الحديقة ، باستخدام كلمات من القائمة:

environment – park – flowers – help – trash can

1. Keep the environment clean.
2. --
3. --
4. --
5. --

5 Look and read. Where does the tourist want to go?

انظر واقرأ. أين تريد ان تذهب السائحة:

Excuse me, how do I get to the museum from here?

Go straight, turn left at the end of the road and the museum is on your right.

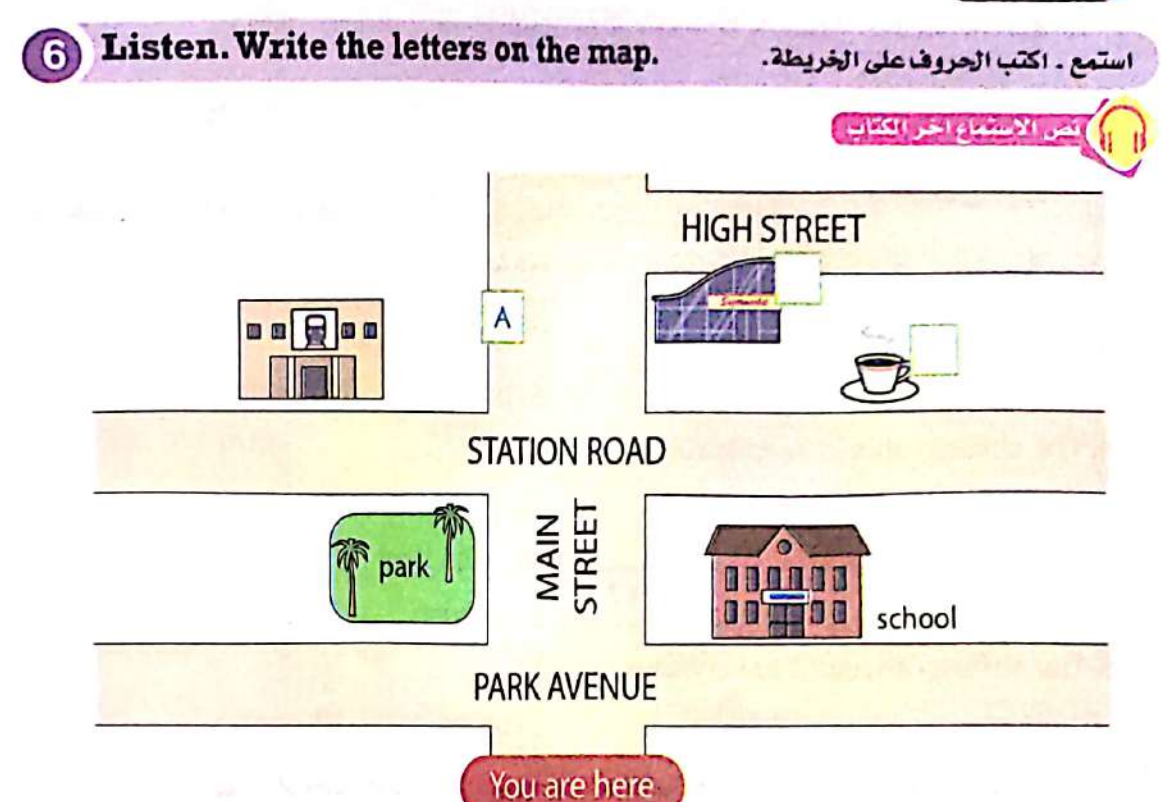
Thank you very much!





6 Listen. Write the letters on the map. استمع ـ اكتب الحروف على الخريطة.

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب



7 Look at the map. You are at the school. Ask for and give directions to different places with a partner.

انظر إلى الخريطة. أنت فى المدرسة. اسأل وأجب عن الاتجاهات إلى اماكن مختلفة مع زميلك.



Excuse me, how do I get to the shopping mall?

Just cross the road!

Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

3. We should encourage our .... to visit the library.

a sisters   b children   c parents   d cousins

4. The children should keep the library ....

a bad   b sad   c clean   d tall

5. They should ask the .... if they need help.

a farmer   b teacher   c librarian   d mechanic

6. The children shouldn't run or make ....

a cakes   b noise   c books   d pens

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. the library - eat - in - Don't. - المنيا - إدارة أبو قرقاص ٢٣

2. go - Children's Library - Can - to - we - the? -

3. is - important - place - This - a very. -

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (Doesn't) eat in the library.

2. Please, ... (drinks) water outside.

3. Go straight. It's .... (in) the left.

4. How do you .... (got) to school?

5. .... (Turns) right. My school is on the left.

6. Don't .... (writing) in the books.

4 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Library rules

Guiding phrases

not eat in the library - walk quietly

- -

- -

- -

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



Lesson 3 ★ Gabi Learns A Lesson



Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

entertain	يرفه / يسلي
creature	مخلوق
foolish	أحمق
apologize	يعتذر
recognize	يتعرف على
lost	تائه
strange-looking	غريب المظهر
tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة

Other words كلمات أخرى



even	حتى
unkindly	بطريقة غير لطيفة
crowds	عدد كبير من الناس (حشود)
dark	مظلم
enormous	هائل / كبير جدًا
jerboa	حيوان الجربوع
rudely	بوقاحة
sounds	أصوات
traders	التجار
villager	قروي (أحد سكان القرية)
walk far	يمشي بعيدًا
sacks of beans	أكياس الفاصوليا
road	طريق
ibis	طائر أبو منجل
land	الأرض
branches	أغصان / فروع
anyway	على أي حال
snake	ثعبان

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
begin	يبدأ	began
fly	يطير	flew
hear	يسمع	heard
know	يعرف	knew
say	يقول	said
see	يرى	saw
sell	يبيع	sold
understand	يفهم	understood

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
apologize	يعتذر	apologized
decide	يقرر	decided
look at	ينظر إلى	looked at
recognize	يتعرف على	recognized
turn	يلتفت	turned
walk far	يمشي بعيدا	walked far
watch	يشاهد	watched
pretend	يتظاهر	pretended

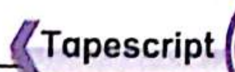


Unit 10 Let's visit Egypt

Study the following

1. Which animal does Gabi meet first? ما الحيوان الذي التقى به جابي أولاً؟
2. I will take them to the market for you. سوف آخذهم إلى السوق من أجلك.
3. He turned left and then right. استدار يسارًا ثم يمينًا.
4. Are you lost? هل أنت تائه؟
5. The ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way.
استطاع طائر أبو منجل أن يطير عالياً فوق الأرض ويخبره بالطريق.
6. Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the branches of a tree.
رأى جابي ثعبانًا يراقبه من أغصان شجرة.
7. He wasn't telling the truth. لم يكن يقول الحقيقة.
8. The snake went to the market every day to entertain the crowds.
ذهب الثعبان إلى السوق كل يوم للترفيه عن الحشود.
9. Look at those enormous ears. انظر إلى تلك الآذان الضخمة.
10. Do you need any help? هل تحتاج إلى أي مساعدة؟
11. The jerboa could hear the sounds of the market traders.
استطاع الجربوع سماع أصوات تجار السوق.
12. He knew he was foolish and he was sorry. كان يعلم أنه أحمق وكان نادمًا.
13. He decided to go to sleep, and to apologize and ask for their help the next day.
قرر أن ينام ، وأن يعتذر ويطلب مساعدتهم في اليوم التالي.
14. Was Gabi right to behave in this way? هل كان جابى على حق فى التصرف بهذه الطريقة؟

1 **Listen, and read. Which animal does Gabi meet first?** استمع واقرأ:





نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:

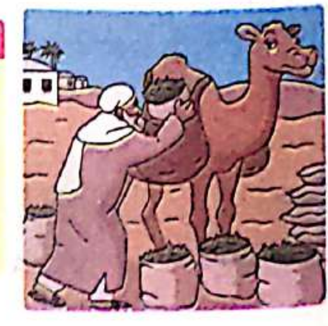


One day, a **villager** [1] wanted to sell his beans in the **market** [2], but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said, "Give me the **sacks of beans** [3] - I will take them to the market for you."

Gabi walked **along** [4] the **road** [5]. He turned left and then right and then left again. Soon, Gabi didn't **recognize** [6] the road.

Arabic Meaning

١- قروي
٢- سوق
٣- أكياس الفاصوليا
٤- بمحاذاة
٥- طريق
٦- يتعرف على



"Are you **lost**(7)?" called an **ibis**(8). Gabi had never seen such a **strange-looking**(9) bird.

"No, I'm not lost," **pretended**(10) Gabi. Gabi didn't know that the ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way.

Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the **branches**(11) of a tree.

"You look lost," said the snake.

"No, I'm not," said Gabi - again he wasn't **telling the truth**(12). "**Anyway** (13), **even**(14) if I was, you can't help - you haven't even got legs," he said **unkindly**(15). Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day to **entertain**(16) the **crowds**(17).

It began to get **dark**(18). Gabi saw a little animal on the road in front of him.

"What a funny-looking **creature**(19). Look at those **enormous**(20) ears," he thought to himself.


٧- تائه
٨- أبو منجل
٩- غريب المظهر
١٠- تظاهر
١١- أغصان/فروع
١٢- يقول الحقيقة
١٣- على أي حال
١٤- حتى
١٥- بطريقة غير لطيفة
١٦- يسلي
١٧- الحشود
١٨- مظلم
١٩- مخلوق
٢٠- هائل/كبير جدًا
٢١- الجربوع
٢٢- بوقاحة
٢٣- أصوات
٢٤- التجار
٢٥- أحمق
٢٦- يعتذر

"Hello," said the **jerboa**(21). "Do you need any help?"

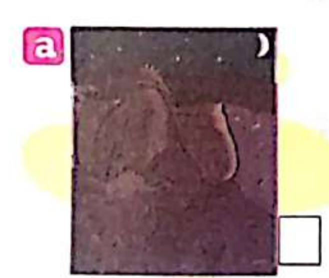
"No, I don't!" replied Gabi **rudely**(22). Gabi didn't know that the jerboa could hear the **sounds**(23) of the market **traders**(24).

"OK, good night then," called the jerboa.

Soon, it was completely dark and Gabi understood he needed the animals' help. He knew he was **foolish**(25) and he was sorry. He decided to go to sleep, and to **apologize**(26) and ask for their help the next day.

2 Read the story again. Put the pictures in the correct order:

أقرأ القصة مرة أخرى . رتب الصور:

a  ☐

b  1

c  ☐

d  ☐

e  ☐

3 Read the story again. Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

اقرأ القصة مرة أخرى. أكمل الجمل بالكلمات الموجودة فى القائمة :

fly – hear – help – snake

1. At the start, Gabi offered to .... the villager.
2. The ibis could help because he could .... over the land.
3. The .... could help because he went to the market every day.
4. The jerboa could help because he could .... very well.

4 Read and think. Talk to your partner:

اقرأ وفكر. تحدث مع زميلك :

1. Why do you think that Gabi did not tell the truth to any of the animals?
   - a He didn't want anyone to know that he was lost.
   - b He was angry.
   - c He was clever.
2. Was Gabi right to behave in this way?
   - a Yes, because he didn't need help.
   - b No, because he wasn't telling the truth.
   - c Yes, because the villager told him to go alone.
3. What lesson did Gabi learn at the end of the story?
   - a You shouldn't talk to strangers.
   - b Being rude is important.
   - c Asking for help is good.





◉ الإدغام diphthong في علم الصوتيات يعني دمج صوتين متحركين في مقطع صوتي واحد.

1 Listen and repeat: استمع وكرر:

/əʊ/	go يذهب	show يبين/ عرض	below أسفل	wrote كتب	grow يزرع/ ينمو
/aɪ/	bite يعض	right صحيح/ يمين	bike دراجة	write يكتب	
/ɔɪ/	boy ولد	toy لعبة	coin عملة معدنية	enjoy يستمتع بـ	point يشير
/eɪ/	make يصنع	play يلعب	eight ثمانية	bake يخبز	ache ألم

◉ أحيانا يتم نطق نفس الصوت بطرق مختلفة مثلما في كلمتي eight & ate

2 Look at the table. Listen again and say: انظر للجدول. استمع مرة أخرى وقل:

1. go	2. bite	3. boy	4. make
show	right	toy	play

3 Listen and say. Write the words in the correct places in the table:

استمع وقل. اكتب الكلمات فى المكان الصحيح فى الجدول:

1. ache	2. below	3. eight	4. bake	5. coin	6. time
7. grow	8. bike	9. enjoy	10. wrote	11. write	12. point

4 Choose the correct word from the table above:

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة من الجدول أعلاه:

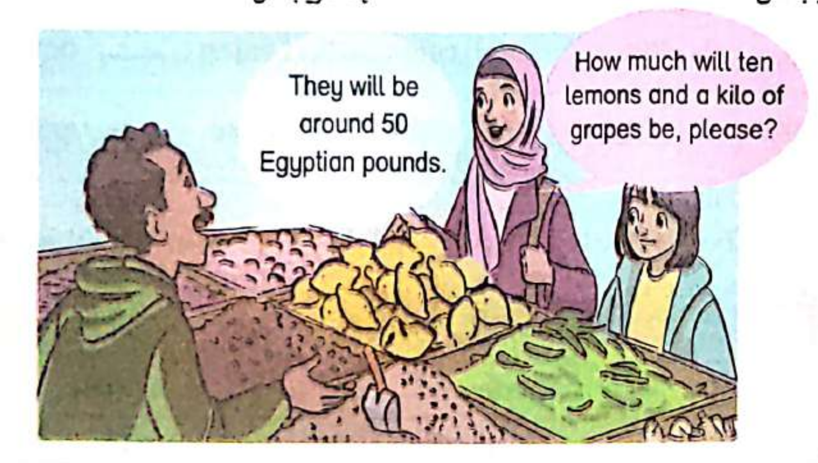
grow - eight - ache - make

1. I have a bad tooth ....
2. Look! There are .... trees in the garden.
3. Let's .... a cake for my birthday!
4. Does the farmer .... vegetables?



الإجابة التقديرية أو التقريبية "estimated answer" ليست الإجابة الفعلية وإنما تعد تخميناً جيداً. على سبيل المثال، إذا قمنا بإضافة العدد ١٧ إلى العدد ١٢ فأنت تعلم أن الإجابة هي "قريبة من" ٣٠ وليست قريبة من ٦٠. هناك بعض المصطلحات التي يمكن أن نستخدمها في اللغة الإنجليزية للتعبير عن الإجابة التقديرية يمكنك أن تقول:

- It's about ... إنه حوالي ...
- It's around ... إنه حوالي ...
- It's close to ... إنه قريب من ...
- It's near ... إنه قريب من ...



5 Look quickly and circle the correct estimated answer:

انظر بسرعة وضع دائرة حول الإجابة التقريبية الصحيحة:

1. 34 + 47 = 60 - 80 - 120
2. 77 + 120 = 80 - 130 - 200
3. 338 + 336 = 480 - 680 - 980
4. 1050 + 50 + 104 = 1000 - 1200 - 2000
5. 17 + 39 + 44 + 308 = 300 - 400 - 500

لتقدير حاصل جمع عددين أو ثلاثة أو أكثر يجب أن تحدد الرقم الأكبر فى كل عدد. لاحظ أولاً مكونات العدد.

1	5	4	7
آلاف	مئات	عشرات	آحاد

- فمثلا فى العددين: 27 / 36

ننظر للرقم الأكبر فى كل عدد حيث يمثل 2 عشرون فى 27 وتمثل 3 الرقم 30 فى 36 لذلك حاصل جمعهما سيزيد عن 50 ولن يصل إلى 70 إذا بالتقدير يصبح الناتج حوالى 60.

إذا طلب تقدير جمع 472 / 423 انظر إلى الرقم الأكبر وهو المئات ومجموعات المئات فى العددين يساوى 800 لذلك إذا طلب منك التقدير بناء على مجموع 72 / 23 بالتقريب يكون الناتج 900.



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

along - walk - well - enormous - sounds

I buy everything for my mom from the market. I ❶ .... to the market because it is near my house. I walk ❷ .... the road. I know the road ❸ .... The market is very big. It's ❹ .... I find everything in this market.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

An old man wanted to buy food for his family, but he couldn't go. He asked his little son, Sameh, to go to the market for him. Sameh accepted and went to the market. On his way to the market, **he** met an old woman who was carrying heavy bags. He offered to help her, and the woman accepted and she was very happy. At the end, the woman thanked him for his help and gave him some apples.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sameh was a .... boy.
   a) bad b) busy c) good d) sad
2. The woman gave Sameh some ....
   a) carrots b) tomatoes c) oranges d) apples

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun "**he**" refer to? ----------------------
4. Why did the woman thank Sameh? ----------------------

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. need - any - Do - help - you?

----

2. the - beans - sacks - Give - of - me.

----

3. first - does - Which - Gabi - animal - meet?

----

4. fly - land - The ibis - above - could - the.

----

5. telling - wasn't - He - the truth.

----

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. are you lost

----

2. retaj and Karma went to the market

----

5 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Helping others

Guiding phrases

offer help - respect them



LESSONS

4&5 ★ Writing & Project





استمع إلى المفردات:

zoo	حديقة حيوان
markets	أسواق
restaurants	مطاعم
shopping malls	مراكز التسوق
location	موقع
history	التاريخ
culture	الحضارة / الثقافة
arts	الفنون

tourist attractions	اماكن الجذب السياحي
relaxing	مريح
delicious	لذيذ
Cairo	القاهرة
London	لندن
New York	نيويورك
waterpark	متنزه مائي
park	حديقة عامة

Other words  كلمات أخرى

bridges	كباري
walking around	التجول
worry	قلق
plenty	الكثير
treasures	كنوز
New Alamein	مدينة العلمين الجديدة
picnic	نزهة خلوية

Buckingham Palace	قصر باكنجهام
theaters	المسارح
British Museum	المتحف البريطاني
boat trip	رحلة بالقارب
middle	منتصف / وسط
International Park	الحديقة الدولية
shade	ظل
the River Thames	نهر التايمز

Adjectives  صفات

fun	مرح / مَمَتع
large	كبير
negative	سلبي
positive	إيجابي
perfect	مثالي
wonderful	رائع

amazing	مذهل
beautiful	جميل
cool	رائع
exciting	مثير
famous	مشهور
fascinating	رائعة



Unit 10 Let's visit Egypt

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
rain	تمطر	rained
visit	يزور	visited
like	يحب	liked
encourage	يشجع	encouraged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
see	يرى	saw
take	يأخذ	took
choose	يختار	chose
feed	يطعم	fed

Study the following

1. This is one of the most exciting cities in the world.
هذه واحدة من أكثر المدن إثارة في العالم.
2. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter. غالبًا ما تمطر هنا، لكن لا يهم.
3. There are lots of fun things to do. يوجد الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة التي يمكنك القيام بها.
4. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames
يمكنك القيام برحلة مريحة بالقارب على نهر التايمز .
5. There are plenty of different restaurants to choose from.
يوجد الكثير من المطاعم المختلفة للاختيار من بينها.
6. You can find delicious food from all over the world here!
يمكنك أن تجد هنا طعامًا لذيذًا من جميع أنحاء العالم.
7. There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein.
يوجد العديد من الأشياء المثيرة التي يمكنك القيام بها في العلمين الجديدة.
8. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot.
المدينة على الشاطئ لذا يمكنك زيارة البحر البارد عندما يكون الجو حارًا.
9. You can visit the beautiful International Park. يمكنك زيارة الحديقة الدولية الجميلة.
10. There are some amazing treasures there. يوجد بعض الكنوز المدهشة.
11. I can't wait to see you in New Alamein. لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك في العلمين الجديدة.
12. There is a big zoo right next to the school. توجد حديقة حيوانات كبيرة بجوار المدرسة.
13. We can help to feed the animals. يمكننا المساعدة في إطعام الحيوانات.
14. There is a waterpark that is always open. يوجد حديقة مائية مفتوحة دائمًا.
15. It's free to go in! الدخول مجاني!
16. There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food.
يوجد سوق رائع يبيع جميع أنواع الأطعمة اللذيذة.
17. This is our perfect town! هذه مدينتنا المثالية!

1 Read. Which place is the writer describing? Check (√) the correct photo below:

اقرأ. أى الأماكن يصفها الكاتب؟ ضع علامة (√) على الصورة الصحيحة أسفل:


استمع إلى النص؛

This is one of the most exciting(1) cities in the world. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter(2) because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions(3). You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum(4). You can take a relaxing(5) boat trip on the River Thames(6) and go under the famous bridges(7). All the walking around will make you hungry! But don't worry, there are plenty(8) of different restaurants to choose from. You can find delicious food from all over the world here!

Arabic Meaning

١- مثير
٢- لا يهم
٣- الجذب السياحي
٤- المتحف البريطاني
٥- مريح
٦- نهر التايميز
٧- كباري مشهورة
٨- الكثير


a Cairo


b New York


c London

2 Look and find. Are the adjectives positive or negative? Why?

انظر وأوجد. هل الصفات إيجابية أم سلبية؟ لماذا؟

1. Find an adjective that describes the city ....
2. Find an adjective that describes the boat trip. ....
3. Find an adjective that describes the food. ....

Tip!

When you are trying to encourage people to go to a place, use positive adjectives to describe the place.

عندما تحاول تشجيع الناس على الذهاب إلى مكان ما، استخدم الصفات الإيجابية لوصف المكان.



How to write a descriptive paragraph
كيفية كتابة فقرة وصفية

You are going to write a description of your town or city. You want to encourage people to visit it. Write notes about the good things about your town or city. Think about famous attractions:

سوف تكتب وصفًا لمدينتك أو بلدتك، وتريد تشجيع الناس على زيارتها. اكتب ملاحظات عن الأشياء الجيدة عن بلدتك أو مدينتك. فكر في معالم الجذب الشهيرة. ضع الآتى فى الاعتبار:

- famous attractions — أماكن جذب شهيرة
- location - is it near a beach / river? — الموقع هل هي قريبة من الشاطئ / النهر؟
- history — التاريخ
- culture — الثقافة / الحضارة
- arts — الفنون

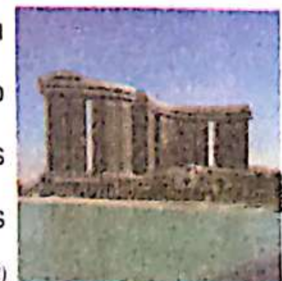
3 Read the paragraph about New Alamein. Underline the adjectives:

اقرأ الفقرة القادمة عن مدينة العلمين الجديدة. ضع خط تحت الصفات:



استمع إلى النص:

NEW ALAMEIN



Arabic Meaning
١- العلمين الجديدة
٢- وسط
٣- الحديقة الدولية
٤- التاريخ
٥- المركز الأثري
٦- كنوز

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein[1]. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle[2] of the city! You can also visit the beautiful International Park[3]. If you want to learn about the fascinating history[4] of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center[5]. There are some amazing treasures[6] there. I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.



How to make a poster about your perfect town
كيف تصنع ملصق عن مدينتك المثالية؟

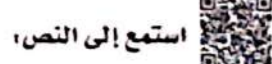
Make a poster about your perfect town. Think about the types of places that you want in your perfect town. Here are some ideas

اصنع ملصق عن مدينتك المثالية. فكر في أنواع الأماكن التي تريدها في مدينتك المثالية. إليك بعض الأفكار:

a waterpark	متنزه مائي
a park	حديقة عامة
a zoo	حديقة حيوان
markets	أسواق
restaurants	مطاعم
shopping malls	مراكز التسوق

Read and do: اقرأ وافعل:

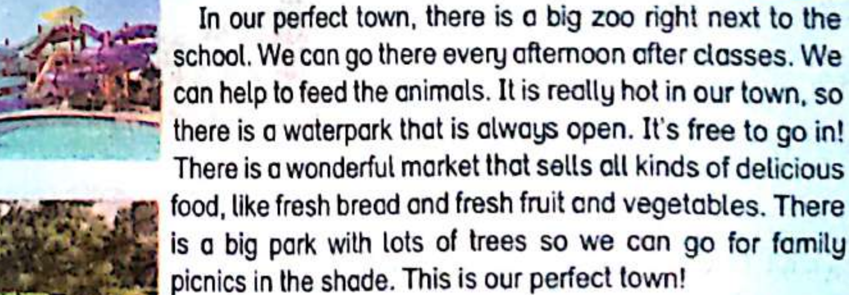
1. Look at the poster. Study the heading, text, and pictures.
   انظروا إلى الملصق. ادرسوا العنوان والنص والصور.
2. Think about your poster. What will you include? فكروا في ملصقكم. ماذا سيتضمن؟
3. Decide who will do what. Do your research. قرروا من سيفعل ماذا. قوموا بالبحث.
4. Work together to make your poster. Check your work at the end.
   اعملوا سويًا لصنع الملصق. تأكدوا من عملكم في النهاية.



استمع إلى النص:

Heading العنوان الرئيسي

Our perfect town



In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals. It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open. It's free to go in! There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables. There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family picnics in the shade. This is our perfect town!



Pictures الصور

Text النص

Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Salma lives in a small ....

   a village   b town   c city   d hotel

2. Salma likes to play with her .... after school.

   a toys   b friends   c parents   d cousins

3. There is a .... next to Salma's house.

   a park   b water park   c museum   d hotel

4. Salma lives with her ....

   a friends   b parents   c uncles   d aunts

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

most - city - fun - Tower - bridge

I'm Amr. I live in Cairo. It's a big (1) .... It's one of the (2) .... exciting cities in the world. There are lots of (3) .... things to do. You can visit the Cairo (4) .... It's very high.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. find - here - You - delicious - can - food. ....
2. one - cities - of - This is - the most - exciting. ....
3. you - do - What - in - can - New Alamein? ....
4. any - amazing - Are - treasures - there? ....

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. where do you live, amal?

....

2. Lena and heba went to the park

....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.





Review

Places



bank
بنك



factory
مصنع



monument
نُصب تذكاري / أثر



library
مكتبة



shopping mall
مول تجاري




square
ميدان



station
محطة



museum
متحف



market
سوق



beach
شاطئ



supermarket
سوبر ماركت



hotel
فندق



restaurant
مطعم

mint tea	شاي بالنعناع
local cuisine	مأكولات / أطباق محلية
shopping	التسوق
spend ages	يقضي الكثير من الوقت
originally	أصلا / فى الاصل
on vacation	في إجازة
apologize	يعتذر
tourist attractions	أماكن الجذب السياحي
relaxing	مريح
delicious	لذيذ
Cairo	القاهرة
London	لندن

New York	نيويورك
waterpark	متنزه مائي
recognize	يتعرف على
lost	تائه
strange-looking	غريب المظهر
tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة
entertain	يرفه / يسلي
location	موقع
history	التاريخ
culture	الحضارة / الثقافة
arts	الفنون

Unit 10 Let's visit Egypt



Adjectives صفات

exciting	مثير
famous	مشهور
fascinating	رائعة
fun	مرح ممتع
cool	رائع

negative	سلبي
positive	إيجابي
perfect	مثالي
wonderful	رائع



Other words كلمات أخرى

traditions	تقاليد
Alexandria Library	مكتبة الإسكندرية
sacks of beans	أكياس الفاصوليا
ibis	طائر أبو منجل
branches	أغصان / فروع
crowds	الحشود
enormous	هائل
jerboa	حيوان الجربوع
rudely	بوقاحة

traders	التجار
Buckingham Palace	قصر باكنجهام
British Museum	المتحف البريطاني
International Park	الحديقة الدولية
Archaeological center	المركز الأثرى
shade	ظل
it doesn't matter	لا يهم
treasures	كنوز
New Alamein	مدينة العلمين الجديدة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
serve	يقدم طعام	served
remind	يُذكِّر	reminded
borrow	يستعير	borrowed
own	يملك	owned
push	يضغط يدفع	pushed
turn	يستدر	turned
cross	يعبر	crossed
hurry	يسرع	hurried
recognize	يتعرف على	recognized
pretend	يتظاهر	pretended
encourage	يشجع	encouraged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
find out	يكتشف	found out
show	يبين	showed
stand	يقف	stood
choose	يختار	chose
write	يكتب	wrote
lose	يفقد	lost
feed	يطعم	fed

Grammar

قواعد لغوية

1 Imperative الأمر

◉ نستخدم صيغة الأمر لاعطاء تعليمات بفعل أو عدم فعل شيء.

- اولاً الأمر المثبت.

Infمصدر الفعل + باقى الجملة.

- Do your homework.

◉ يمكن أن يأتى قبل الفعل كلمات تدل على الطلب المهذب أو اسم شخص:

- Please, open the window.
- Ali, close the window.

- ثانيًا الامر المنفى.

Don't / Never + infمصدر الفعل + باقى الجملة.

- Don't play in the street.
- Never come to school late.

◉ لاحظ لا تبدأ الجملة الأمرية بفاعل subject ولكن تبدأ بالفعل فى المصدر:

◉ لا يأتى بعد فعل الامر حرف جر (to)

---

2 Giving directions اعطاء الاتجاهات

◉ للسؤال عن الاتجاهات هناك عدة طرق وهى:

1 Excuse me, how do I get to +اسم المكان?

- معذرة، كيف يمكننى أن أصل إلى.........؟

2 Is there (اسم المكان) near here?

- هل يوجد (اسم المكان) بالقرب من هنا؟

3 Where is (اسم المكان), please?

- أين يوجد (اسم المكان) من فضلك؟

- Excuse me, how do I get to the park?
- Is there a park near here?
- Where is the park, please?

◉ للإجابة على هذه الأسئلة نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء التعليمات ووصف الاتجاهات:

- Turn right. استدر يمينًا.
- Cross the road. اعبر الشارع.
- Go straight. اذهب بطول.

Writing Skills

مهارات الكتابة

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words

Lesson 1

A visit to Alexandria

1. Last week was my holiday. I went to Alexandria with my family. It's an exciting place to visit. My favorite place is the beach. We went to the beach and had a great time. I swam and played football with my brothers.

Lesson 2

Library rules

2. At the library, we should respect the rules. We should put the books on the shelf. We should walk quietly. We should not eat in the library. We should not use our cell phones there. We should not talk loudly.

Lesson 3

Helping others

3. We should be helpful. We should offer help to anyone carrying heavy bags. We should also help old people. If a person is poor and needs money, we should give him money. If a person is hungry, we should give them food.

Activity - Unit 10

My city

4. I like my city, Alexandria very much. It's very clean and beautiful. The people in the city are very friendly. There are many places to visit. There are big markets, shopping malls, schools and hospitals. I love my beautiful city.



Al- Azhar Exercises



الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:
استمع وأختر:



1. Yesterday,I visited Alexandria with my .... (brothers - teachers - friends)
2. Alexandria is a big .... (town - city - village)
3. There's even a .... (beach - river - lake)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words below:
أقرأ وأكمل:

Library - What - reading - going

A : Where are the children ....?

B : They are going to Alexandria ....

A : .... are they doing?

B : They are .... stories.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:
اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Uncle Mahmoud has a big house with a beautiful garden outside the house. He has no children, but he has two pets. He likes keeping pets and he looks after them very well. He has a dog called "Lion" and a cat called "Pos Pos" .Uncle Mahmoud feeds his pets every day. He is a kind man.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Does uncle Mahmoud have children?
2. What does uncle Mahmoud like keeping?

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. Uncle Mahmoud has a beautiful garden .... the house. (outside - inside - under)
4. He has a dog called .... (Tiger - Lion - Fox)
5. Uncle Mahmoud feeds his pets every .... (day - week - year)





D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. Come and .... lunch with us.

   a having   b had   c have

2. Alexandria is a big ....

   a farm   b park   c city

3. Study the lesson again and .... the exercise.

   a make   b do   c close

4. We .... keep the environment clean.

   a can't   b should   c shouldn't

5. People were buried in .... when they died.

   a parks   b tombs   c farms

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. be - tomorrow - Don't - late.

   ----

2. Library - is - the - This - Alexandria.

   ----

3. do - How - the - I - get to - station?

   ----

4. there - Is - a factory - here - near?

   ----

5. your - in - money - Keep - a bank.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hany goes to Alexandria with his ....
   a toys   b family   c friends   d books
2. Alexandria is a very .... city.
   a big   b tall   c small   d old
3. Hany stays in a hotel near the ....
   a beach   b train station   c park   d school
4. Hany has lunch at the ....
   a party   b restaurant   c beach   d station

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Don't use your .... phone in the library.
   a call   b cell   c book   d toy
2. The food in this restaurant is very good. It tastes ....
   a bad   b ugly   c delicious   d high
3. I love sitting in the roof .... of the hotel.
   a square   b museum   c garden   d station
4. I prefer to buy my ingredients at the ....
   a museum   b market   c library   d hotel

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

international - beach - exciting - hot - middle

New Alamein is a city in north of Egypt. There many (1) .... things to do. The city is on the (2) ...., so you can visit the cool sea when it's (3) .... This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There also a large green lake right in the (4) .... of the city.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi friends! My name is Mai and I live in Ras El-Bar. **It** isn't a very big town near the sea. About 10,000 people live here. There are about thirty shops in Ras El-Bar and there are three supermarkets. In my town, you can get everything you need. There are five banks and a post office. There is a police station and a library. I usually go to the market with my mom.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of this passage is about ....

   a Mai's family   b Ras El-Bar   c the sea   d the shops

2. Mai lives in a .... town.

   a small   b big   c large   d cute

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How many people live in Ras El-Bar? ------------------------------

4. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to? ------------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. need - Do - any - you - help? ------------------------------

2. in - , please - the - Don't - library - eat. ------------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:
اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (Didn't) talk loudly, please.

2. .... (Keeps) your classroom clean.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

which place would you like to visit

----

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

My city

Guiding phrases

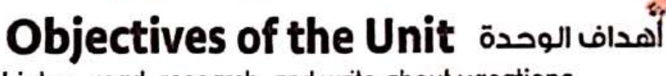
many places - beautiful city



Being responsible

Unit 11
Vacations
العطلات





Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

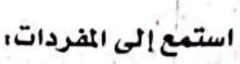
1. Listen, read, research, and write about vacations
   -يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويجري بحثا ويكتب عن العطلات.
2. Think about environmental responsibility.
   -يفكر الطالب في المسئولية البيئية.
3. Practice using prepositions of time.
   - يتدرب الطالب على استخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت.
4. Listen to a conversation. - يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة.
5. Learn about different types of triangles.
   - يتعلم الطالب عن الأنواع المختلفة من المثلثات.
6. Read and say words with the "th" sound.
   - يقرأ الطالب ويقول كلمات بها صوت th.
7. Think about my perfect vacation. - يفكر الطالب فى عطلة مثالية.
8. Write a diary entry for my best day on vacation.
   - يكتب الطالب تدوينة يومية عن أفضل يوم فى العطلة.
9. Make a poster for a vacation destination.
   - يقوم الطالب بعمل ملصق عن وجهة الإجازة.




Lesson 1

A world trip

Key vocabulary



hotel
فندق


suitcase
حقيبة سفر


swimming pool
حمام سباحة

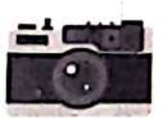

high-rise building
ناطحة سحاب


theme park
ملاهي



ticket
تذكرة


beach
شاطيء


camera
كاميرا


city
مدينة


museum
متحف


airport
مطار


sunglasses
نظارة شمس


tourist
سائح


passport
جواز سفر

Other words  كلمات أخرى

luckily	لحسن الحظ
Singapore	سنغافورة
flight	رحلة جوية
vacation	إجازة / عطلة
footprints	آثار القدم
daughter	ابنة
husband	زوج
gardens	منطقة حدائق

aloud	بصوت عال
degree	درجة الحرارة
view	منظر
island	جزيرة
son	ابن
floor	طابق / دور في مبنى
vanilla	فانيليا



Important Phrases  عبارات مهمة

English	Arabic
a business trip	رحلة عمل
a boat trip	رحلة (نزهة) بالقارب
from all around the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
in the middle of	في منتصف
by the Bay	بجوار الخليج
a really special place	مكان مميز جدا

Adjectives  الصفات

English	Arabic
wonderful / lovely	رائع
comfortable	مريح
busy	مزدحم
huge	ضخم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
arrive	يصل	arrived
visit	يزور	visited
relax	يستريح	relaxed
pack	يحزم (حقائب)	packed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
spend	يقضي (وقت)	spent
fly	يطير / يسافر جوا	flew
take photos	يلتقط صور	took photos
leave	يغادر	left
sleep	ينام	slept

Study the following

1. They are on a business trip traveling around the world.
   - إنهم مسافرون حول العالم في رحلة عمل.
2. Luckily, we've got a lovely hotel room.
   - لحسن الحظ حصلنا على غرفة رائعة في فندق.
3. The view is beautiful and we can see the beach.
   - المنظر جميل ويمكننا أن نرى الشاطىء.
4. There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel!
   - يوجد حمام سباحة ضخم على سطح الفندق.
5. It didn't take long to get through the airport when we arrived.
   - لم نستغرق الكثير من الوقت لكي نمر من المطار عندما وصلنا.
6. We got our suitcases straight away.
   - حصلنا على حقائب السفر فوراً.
7. There are lots of high-rise buildings.
   - يوجد الكثير من ناطحات السحاب.
8. There are many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax.
   - يوجد الكثير من الحدائق والأشجار لكي نجلس تحتها ونستريح.
9. We visited the museum of ice cream!
   - زرنا متحف المثلجات.
10. I hope you are all well.
    - اتمنى ان تكونوا جميعًا بخير.
11. Now I have to find our tickets and passports and pack our suitcases again!
    - الآن يجب ان اجد تذاكري وجواز سفري وأحزم حقائبي مرة اخرى.

1 Listen and read. استمع وأقرأ،

Where are Uncle Hani and Aunt Nadia now?

Today Mom received an email from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hani.They are on a business trip traveling around the world. Nadia and Hani were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the email aloud to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.



Singapore City

Tapescript نص الاستماع استمع إلى النص،

To: Samiax@mail.com

Subject: My trip

Dear Samia,

Hello to you all from Singapore[1]! It's hot here - about 36 degrees[2]. Luckily, we've got a lovely hotel[3] room. We're on the 42nd floor. The view is beautiful and we can see the beach. There's a huge swimming pool[4] on the roof of the hotel! Can you believe it? The flight[5] from India took about six hours, but it was comfortable[6] and we both slept. It didn't take long to get through[7] the airport when we arrived - we got our suitcases[8] straight away.

Singapore is a wonderful city.There are lots of high-rise buildings [9], but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay [10] is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're in the middle[11] of a busy city.

Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some other tourists to an island. There is a theme park[12]. It was so much fun! After that, we visited the museum[13] of ice cream! I had a 'Queen Bee' ice cream which is vanilla and honey with chocolate. It was great!

I hope you are all well. We will fly to Japan [14] tomorrow and I'll send you another email when we arrive. Now I have to find our tickets[15] and passports[16] and pack[17] our suitcases again!

Love

Nadia

Arabic Meaning

١- دولة سنغافورة
٢- درجات حرارة
٣- فندق
٤- حمام سباحة
٥- رحلة جوية
٦- مريح
٧- يمر عبر
٨- حقائب سفر
٩- ناطحات سحاب
١٠- خليج
١١- في منتصف
١٢- ملاهي
١٣- متحف
١٤- دولة اليابان
١٥- تذاكر
١٦- جوازات سفر
١٧- يحزم (حقائب)



2 Listen again. Check (✓) the places that Nadia and Hani visited in Singapore.

استمع مرة أخرى. ضع علامة (✓) أمام الأماكن التى زارتها نادية وهاني فى سنغافورة.

1- a swimming pool ☐ 2- an airport ☐
3- a theme park ☐ 4- an ice cream museum ☐
5- a zoo ☐ 6- a park ☐

3 Read again. Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false sentences in your notebook:

اقرأ مرة أخرى. حدد إن كانت الجمل صحيحة أم خاطئة. صحح الجمل الخاطئة فى كراستك:

1- Nadia and Hani are staying at a friend's house. ☐
2- They flew from Cairo. ☐
3- They thought the Gardens by the Bay was lovely. ☐
4- Yesterday they went to a museum. ☐

4 Listen and say. Then write:

استمع وقل. ثم اكتب:

hotel - passport - swimming pool - suitcase - ticket - tourist

1 ticket
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

5 Read. Are these things you take on vacation, or places you go on vacation? Write them on the correct list:

اقرأ. هل هذه الأشياء التى تأخذها معك فى إجازة؟ أم هى أماكن تذهب إليها فى إجازة؟ اكتبهم فى المكان الصحيح:

beach - camera - city - hotel - museum - passport - suitcase - sunglasses swimming pool - theme park - ticket

Things you take on vacation أشياء تأخذها معك فى إجازة	Places you go on vacation أماكن تذهب إليها فى إجازة
- suitcase	- beach

Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Osama went to .... last month.
   a Cairo   b Dubai   c Alexandria   d Luxor
2. There are many .... buildings.
   a short   b high   c fair   d small
3. Osama went on rides at the theme ....
   a building   b park   c house   d wheels
4. Osama went on a .... trip.
   a car   b boat   c bike   d taxi

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. There is a .... park in my town.
   a same   b theme   c boat   d thing
2. When you need to travel around the world, you need a ....
   a password   b passport   c museum   d message
3. Tourists usually stay in ....
   a museums   b hotels   c suitcases   d zoos
4. I like going to the club and swim in the ....
   a city   b swimming pool   c hotel   d airport

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. you - Can - it - believe? ....
2. a boat - went - trip - We - on. ....
3. you - well - I - are - all - hope. ....
4. our tickets - have to - and - I - find - passports. ....

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. do Amr and tamer go to Singapore?

....

2. we will fly to Japan tomorrow

....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



Lesson 2 ★ A special trip



Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:

check in	يسجل وصوله للفندق
traditional	تقليدي
day trip	رحلة نهارية (في النهار)
diary	مفكرة يومية
diary entry	تدوينة في المفكرة اليومية
wander	يتجول
handicrafts / crafts	مصنوعات يدوية
stalls	أكشاك



Other words كلمات أخرى

leaflet	منشور / كراسة دعائية
tour	جولة
mud	وحل / طين
exploring	استكشاف
culture	حضارة / ثقافة
trading center	مركز تجاري
rug	سجادة
on the way	في الطريق
idea	فكرة
home	وطن
citadel	قلعة
The Roman Amphitheater	المدرج الروماني
meeting	مقابلة
skin	جلد
chance	فرصة
destination	جهة الوصول
midnight	منتصف الليل
tour guide	مرشد سياحي
archaeological	أثري
arts and crafts	فنون وحرف
museum	متحف
Jordan	الأردن
Jordanian	اردني
the Dead Sea	البحر الميت

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
check in	يصل للفندق	checked in
head out	يتوجه إلى	headed out
float	يطفو	floated
walk around	يتجول في	walked around
discover	يكتشف	discovered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
buy	يشتري	bought
drive	يقود (سيارة)	drove
write down	يسجل / يدون	wrote down
go back	يعود	went back



Unit 11 Vacations

Study the following

1. Enjoy some free time in the city. - استمتع ببعض وقت الفراغ في المدينة.
2. Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. - اليوم نستمتع بجولة في عمان.
3. Today we head out of the city for a day trip.
   - اليوم نتوجه إلى خارج المدينة في رحلة نهارية.
4. You will find lots of local Jordanian culture.
   - ستجد الكثير من الثقافة الأردنية المحلية.
5. No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea.
   - لا تكتمل زيارة الأردن بدون رحلة إلى البحر الميت.
6. There is so much salt in this sea. - يوجد الكثير جدا من الملح في هذا البحر.
7. We leave at 11 am to drive three hours back to Amman.
   - نغادر الساعة ١١ صباحا لنقود سيارة لمدة ٣ ساعات عائدين إلى عمان.
8. We will stop on the way for lunch. - سنتوقف في الطريق للغداء.
9. It only took an hour to reach our destination. - استغرقت ساعة فقط للوصول لوجهتنا.
10. Several people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls.
    - اشترى الكثير من الناس مصنوعات يدوية أردنية تقليدية من الأكشاك.
11. Today was the best day ever! - كان اليوم افضل يوم على الاطلاق.
12. We had the chance to wander through the streets.
    - اتيحت لنا الفرصة وتجولنا خلال الشوارع.
13. There is so much salt in the sea that you are able to float on the water.
    - يوجد ملح كثير جدًا فى البحر يمكنك من الطفو على الماء.



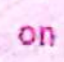
Definitions تعريفات

A diary	مفكرة يومية	is a book in which you write down things that happen to you each day.
A diary entry	تدوينة فى المفكرة	is a piece of writing in a diary.

Grammar

قواعد لغوية

Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

◉ نستخدم حرف الجر on قبل أيام الأسبوع والمناسبات الخاصة والتواريخ المحددة:

- I go swimming **on** Mondays.
- I am having a party **on** my birthday.
- I was born **on** July 6th, 2010.



◉ نستخدم حرف الجر at قبل الوقت وبعض العبارات:

- Our flight lands **at** 8 pm.
- We play basketball **at** lunchtime / **at** night.
- **at** midnight

3 in

◉ نستخدم حرف الجر in قبل الشهور وفصول السنة والسنوات وأيضا أوقات اليوم:

- We visit our cousins **in** June.
- I was born **in** 2010.
- They arrived **in** the morning.
- **in** the afternoon / evening

◉ لاحظ إذا جاء رقم بعد الشهر نستخدم on لأن هنا نقصد اليوم:

- My birthday is **on** October 11th.

1 Read, think, and say. What country would you like to visit? Why?

اقرأ وفكر وقل .ما الدولة التي تريد أن تزورها؟ ولماذا؟

I would like to visit Zambia because I want to see elephants and lions.





استمع إلى النص:



Tapescript نص الاستماع



2 Listen and read the leaflet. How many museums can you visit on this trip?

استمع وأقرأ المنشور. كم عدد المتاحف التى يمكنك زيارتها فى هذه الرحلة؟

DESERT TOURS TRIP TO JORDAN October 4-8



Day 1: Arrive in Amman and check in(1) to our hotel in the middle of the city. Enjoy some free time in the city before meeting at the Memphis restaurant for a traditional(2) Jordanian dinner in the evening.

Day 2: Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. Visit the famous Amman Citadel(3) before exploring the Roman Amphitheater(4) and the Archaeological Museum(5). After a late lunch in a local restaurant, spend the afternoon and evening walking through Amman's many colorful markets(6).



Day 3: Today we head out of the city for a day trip(7) to As-Salt(8). About an hour away from Amman, in the ancient town of As-Salt you will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts(9) to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum and discover(10) the history(11) of As-Salt as Jordan's important trading center(12).



Day 4: No visit to Jordan is complete(13) without a trip to the Dead Sea(14). There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to float on the water! You can also enjoy the Dead Sea mud(15), which is very good for your skin.

Day 5: After enjoying a relaxed breakfast, we leave at 11am to drive three hours back to Amman. We will stop on the way for lunch before arriving at the airport(16) at 5 pm.

Arabic Meaning

١- يسجل وصول فندق
٢- تقليدى
٣- قلعة عمان
٤- المدرج الروماني
٥- المتحف الأثرى
٦- أسواق
٧- رحلة نهارية
٨- مدينة السلط (الأردن)
٩- فنون وحرف
١٠- يكتشف
١١- تاريخ
١٢- مركز تجاري
١٣- مكتمل
١٤- البحر الميت
١٥- طين
١٦- مطار

3 Read again and decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F):

اقرأ مرة أخرى وحدد إذا كانت الجمل صحيحة أم خاطئة،

1- On the first day, you can see the Roman Amphitheater.
2- You visit As-Salt before you visit the Dead Sea.
3- The Abu Jaber Museum is in Jordan's capital city.
4- The markets in As-Salt sell traditional arts and crafts.
5- The Dead Sea mud is bad for your skin.
6- You arrive at the airport on day 5, at 5 am.

4 Read Nahla's diary entry. Which day is she describing? How do you know?

اقرأ تدوينة نهلة اليومية. أي يوم تصف؟ كيف تعرف؟

استمع إلى النص

Thursday, October 6th

Dear Diary,

Today was the best day ever![1] I love anything[2] to do with history- I always go to the museum at home, so today was a special[3] day for me. The bus ride[4] wasn't too bad. It only took an hour to reach[5] our destination[6]. I listened to music on the way and the time went quite[7] quickly. When we arrived, we had the chance to wander through[8] the streets and several[9] people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts[10] from the stalls[11]. I bought a lovely colorful rug[12]. Saleh (our tour guide[13]) was very kind and took it to the bus for me so that I didn't have to carry it around! That was lucky because I spent hours in the museum!

Arabic Meaning

١- على الاطلاق
٢-أي شئ
٣-مميز
٤-جولة بالأتوبيس
٥-يصل إلى
٦-جهة الوصول
٧-إلى حد ما
٨-يتجول عبر
٩-عديد
١٠-مصنوعات يدوية
١١-أكشاك
١٢-سجادة
١٣-مرشد سياحي

5 Complete the sentences with at, on, or in:

أكمل الجمل بـ at / on / in،

1- Dad is a baker. He works ---------------- the mornings.
2- We go to the club ------------------------- Saturdays.
3- Does our next class start ---------------- 2 pm?
4- Grandma was born ---------------------- 1962.
5- Reem's birthday is ---------------- December 4th.

6 **Complete the paragraph with at, on, or in:** أكمل الفقرة بـ at / on / in:

❶ .... Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed ❷ .... 4 o'clock ❸ .... the afternoon. It was about 26 degrees and I was surprised that it was so warm ❹ .... October. We went to our hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city center. Amman is a really busy city ❺ .... night. We walked around the markets and bought some traditional handicrafts. We went back to our hotel ❻ .... about midnight.

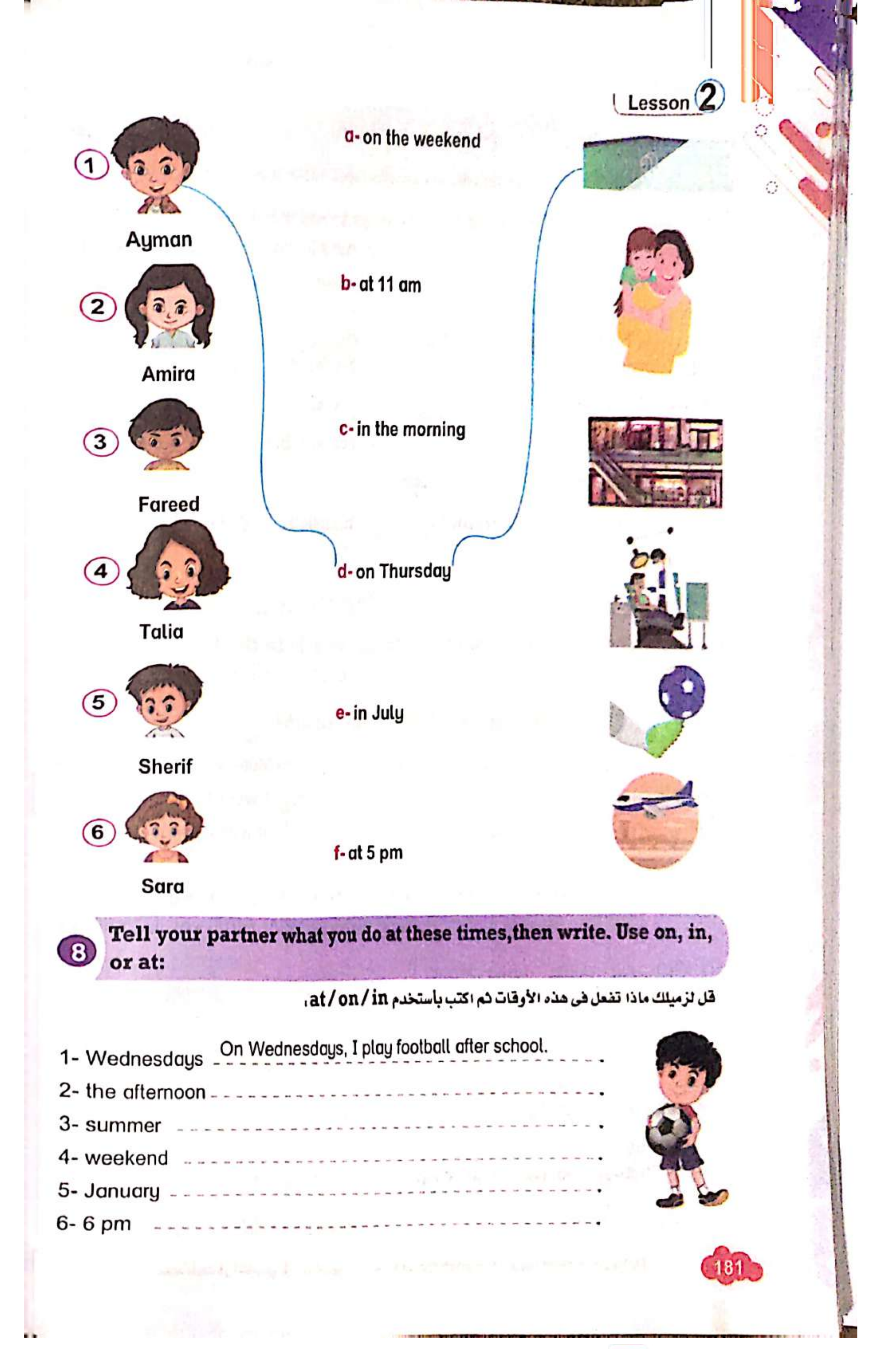
7 **Listen. Match the times with the speakers and activities:**

استمع. وصل الأوقات مع المتحدثين وأنشطتهم:

استمع إلى النص

Tapescript نص الاستماع

Narrator : 1
Boy 1 : Hi Ayman, do you want to play basketball after school on Thursday?
Ayman : On Thursday? I'm sorry, I can't, I go swimming on Thursdays.
Narrator : 2
Girl 1 : Hello Amira, shall we go shopping on the weekend?
Amira : Yes please, that sounds good!
Narrator : 3
Dad : Fareed, remember you have a dentist's appointment this afternoon.
Fareed : Oh yes, it's at five o'clock, isn't it?
Dad : Yes, that's right.
Fareed : Ok, thanks Dad .
Narrator : 4
Mom : Talia, our flight leaves at 11 am.
Talia : OK, Mom, I'll be ready.
Narrator : 5
Sherif : Mom, remember I'm playing football with Ramy in the morning.
Mom : Oh, yes, that's fine, Sherif.
Thanks for reminding me.
Narrator : 6
Sara : Mom, when are we visiting Grandma and Grandpa?
Mom : We're going in July, Sara. Not long now.



1. Ayman
2. Amira
3. Fareed
4. Talia
5. Sherif
6. Sara

a- on the weekend

b- at 11 am

c- in the morning

d- on Thursday

e- in July

f- at 5 pm

8 **Tell your partner what you do at these times, then write. Use on, in, or at:**

قل لزميلك ماذا تفعل فى هذه الأوقات ثم اكتب باستخدم at/on/in

1- Wednesdays On Wednesdays, I play football after school.

2- the afternoon ....

3- summer ....

4- weekend ....

5- January ....

6- 6 pm ....

Activities





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. .... visit many places in Egypt every year.
   a Friends b Tourists c Students d Children
2. Tourists always want to check in a .... hotel.
   a tall b small c comfortable d high
3. Tourists try traditional .... food.
   a Chinese b American c Egyptian d French
4. Tourists like to go to Luxor in ....
   a summer b fall c winter d spring

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

too - special - history - trip - colorful

Yesterday, I went on a school trip. I went to the Egyptian Museum. I love learning about ❶ .... Yesterday was a ❷ .... day. I went by bus. The bus ride wasn't ❸ .... bad. It was a good ❹ .... It was a great day.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. visit - you - would - like to - What?

   ....
2. stop - for lunch - We - on the way - will.

   ....
3. salt - is - the Dead Sea - There - in - so much.

   ....
4. football - Ali - Mondays - on - plays.

   ....



4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We had science lessons .... (in) Thursdays.
2. Our flight to London landed .... (on) 9 o'clock.
3. My father went to the hospital .... (for) midnight.
4. We have a party .... (in) August 15th.
5. We play basketball .... (on) lunchtime.
6. They arrived .... (at) the morning.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. i spent hours in the park

---

2. how many museums can you visit on this trip

---

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

What you do at different times

Guiding phrases

go swimming - enjoy my day



★ Al-Azhar Park




استمع إلى المفردات:

bench	مقعد طويل	go on vacation	يذهب في إجازة
awesome	مذهل	a bit low	حزين أو محبط قليلا



Other words كلمات أخرى

cousin	ابن - ابنة (العم-العمة / الخال-الخالة)	picnic	طعام مخصص للنزهة / نزهة
past	ماراً بـ/ عابراً	suddenly	فجأة
grass	عشب / حشائش	playground	ملعب
meal	وجبة	together	معًا / سوياً
beach	شاطئ	show	عرض (مسرحي)
whole group	مجموعة كاملة	year	عام / سنة
		else	آخر / اضافي



Adjectives صفات

cool	لطيف / بارد	possible	ممكن
wonderful	مدهش	interesting	ممتع / شيق
fantastic	رائع	beautiful	جميل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
come	يأتي	came
sit	يجلس	sat
find	يجد	found
think	يعتقد	thought
know	يعرف	knew

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
phone	يتصل تليفونيًا	phoned
agree	يوافق	agreed
shout	يصيح	shouted
arrive	يصل	arrived
seem	يبدو	seemed



Study the following

1. It was a hot summer. - كان صيفًا حارًا.
2. School was over and he wanted to go on vacation. - الدراسة انتهت وأراد (سليم) أن يذهب في إجازة.
3. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach. - ابن عمه شريف كان بعيدًا بالشاطئ.
4. His family usually went on vacation. - عادة ما تذهب عائلته في إجازة.
5. They had to stay in Cairo. - كان يجب عليهم البقاء في القاهرة.
6. I'm feeling a bit low. - أشعر بالحزن قليلا.
7. I want to be at the beach. - أريد أن أكون على الشاطيء.
8. Can you come to the playground with us? - هل من الممكن أن تأتي معنا إلى الملعب؟
9. Why are you in the city? - لماذا أنت في المدينة؟
10. Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park. - جلست أمي على مقعد واستمتعت بكل النباتات والطيور الجميلة في المتنزه.
11. I think this is a fantastic place. - أعتقد أن هذا مكان رائع.
12. I can see there's a show next week. - أستطيع أن أرى أن هناك عرضا الأسبوع القادم.
13. It seemed that summer in the city would be awesome! - بدا أن ذلك الصيف في المدينة كان رائعًا.

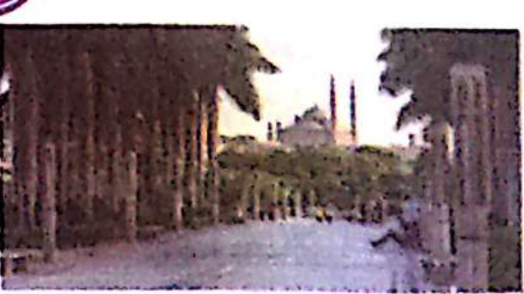
1 Listen and read the story. Why did Seleem feel better at the end of the story?

استمع وأقرأ القصة. لماذا شعر سليم بأنه آخر القصة؟

استمع إلى النص:



Tapescript نص الاستماع



Seleem was feeling sad. It was a hot summer, school was over and he wanted to go on vacation(1). His cousin Sherif was away at the beach and Seleem wanted to be there too. His family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family, but this year that wasn't possible(2) - Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay(3) in Cairo. Marwan, his friend, phoned him, "Hey, how are you, Seleem?" "I'm feeling a bit low(4) - I want to be at the beach," said Seleem. "Well, this year you can't go, so let's find something else to do!" said Marwan. "I know, let's go to Al-Azhar Park."

Arabic Meaning

١- يذهب في إجازة
٢- ممكن
٣- يقيم/يبقى
٤- حزين قليلاً



"Hmm," said Seleem. "I don't know it, but it sounds[5] interesting!" Seleem's mom agreed[6] to take them to the park. She made a picnic[7], so when they arrived, they sat under a big tree on the cool green grass[8] and enjoyed their food. It was such a beautiful day, and Marwan and Seleem played football. Suddenly Ramy and Maged, their friends from school, came running past.
"Hi Ramy!" shouted Seleem. "Why are you in the city? I thought[9] you were at the beach!"
"No," said Ramy. "My grandma's ill so Mom wanted to stay in Cairo. There's a whole group[10] of us who stayed at home and didn't travel. Can you come to the playground[11] with us?" Seleem asked his mom and they all went together[12] to the playground. Mom sat on a bench[13] and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park.
"I think this is a fantastic place," said Mom at the end of the afternoon.

٥- يبدو
٦- وافق
٧- طعام النزهة
٨- عشب
٩- اعتقد
١٠- مجموعة كاملة
١١- ملعب/فناء
١٢- معًا
١٣- مقعد طويل
١٤- يعود
١٥- وجبة
١٦- بدا
١٧- مذهل

"I can see there's a show next week. Let's come back[14] with Dad, see the show, and have a meal[15] at the restaurant." Seleem felt very happy - now he knew his friends were in town and they had a wonderful park. It seemed[16] that summer in the city would be awesome[17]!

2 Read again and circle the correct answer:

اقرأ مرة أخرى وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1- Seleem wasn't at school because
  a he was ill. b he was on vacation.
2- Why did Seleem not go to the beach?
  a Because his grandma was ill. b Because his dad had a new job.
3- Where did they eat in the park?
  a on the grass b at the restaurant
4- Who did Seleem and Marwan meet at the park?
  a friends from school b Sherif, Seleem's cousin
5- What did Seleem and his mom decide to do the following week?
  a come back with Seleem's friends b come back with Seleem's dad

3 Think and say:

فكر وقل:

From what you have read in the story about Al-Azhar Park, would you like to spend a day there?

a Yes? Tell your partner what things you would like to do in Al-Azhar Park and why.

b No? Tell your partner what you would prefer to do that you can't do in Al-Azhar Park.







Lesson 3



Pronunciation

- سوف تتعرف في هذا الدرس على الفرق بين الاصوات /θ/ و/ð/ sounds (th). لنطق حرفي (th) والرمز الصوتي الدال عليها.

To make the /ð/ and /θ/ sounds, press your tongue against your top teeth. The /θ/ sound is unvoiced, which means you should feel some air on your hand when you say it. With the /ð/ sound, there's no air, but you can feel a vibration on your neck.

- لكى تنطق هذه الأصوات يجب أن تضغط بلسانك على أسنانك العليا.
- هذا الصوت /θ/ يشبه حرف (ث) فى اللغة العربية وهو صوت لا تهتز به الاحبال الصوتية وهذا معناه أنك تشعر بهواء على يدك إذا قربتها من فمك عند خروج هذا الصوت.
- أما الصوت /ð/ يشبه حرف (ذ) فى اللغة العربية ولا يوجد هواء عند خروجه ولكن تشعر باهتزاز فى الأحبال الصوتية.

1 Listen and say these words:

استمع وقل هذه الكلمات:

/θ/		/ð/	
thing	شيء	these	هؤلاء
Thursday	يوم الخميس	those	أولئك
think	يعتقد	this	هذا
three	ثلاثة	with	مع
Earth	الأرض	mother	أم
author	مؤلف		

2 Say these words. Add them to the correct column in Exercise 1. Then listen and check:

قل هذه الكلمات. ضعهم في الجدول الآتي حسب نطق حرفي (th) كما بالمثال:

bathroom - father - south - they - other - birthday - clothes - mouth - leather

th /θ/	th /ð/
bathroom	father





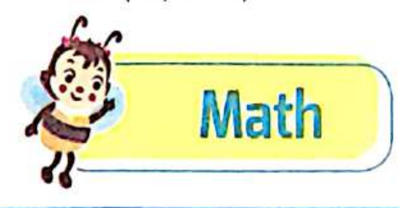
3 Look and write. Add the correct suffix to the words in brackets:

انظر واكتب. أضف النهاية الصحيحة للكلمات ما بين القوسين:

هناك بعض النهايات الشائعة التى تضاف للكلمات لتكوين الصفة مثل النهايات (ive / ous) فى الجدول الآتي:

Word orgin	أصل الكلمة	Adjective	الصفة
poison	سمّ	poisonous	سام
act	يتحرك	active	نشيط
fame	شهرة	famous	مشهور
expense	تكلفة	expensive	غالي الثمن
enormity	ضخامة / كِبَر	enormous	ضخم

1- Be careful! That snake is .... (poison)
2- Ali swims and runs. He's very .... (act)
3- Everyone knows Soha. She is very .... (fame)
4- His watch is very .... (expense)



Many tourists come to visit Egypt and one of the most famous places is the Pyramids of Giza. All their sides are triangles. Let's learn more about triangles below.

- يأتي الكثير من السياح ليزوروا مصر وواحدة من أكثر الأماكن شهرة هى أهرامات الجيزة ، كل جوانبها عبارة عن مثلثات.
- هيا نتعلم المزيد عن المثلثات بالأسفل.

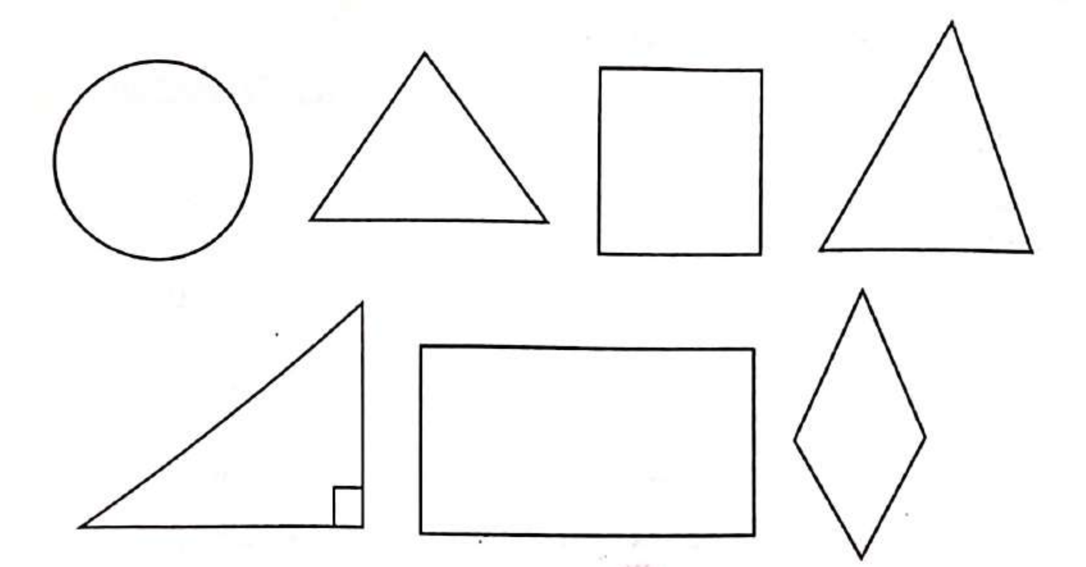
An equilateral triangle		مثلث متساوي الأضلاع (أضلاعه الثلاثة متساوية)
A right angle triangle		مثلث قائم الزاوية (به زاوية قائمة ٩٠°)
An isosceles triangle		مثلث متساوي الساقين (به ضلعين متساويين)
A scalene triangle		مثلث مختلف الأضلاع (كل أضلاعه مختلفة في القياس)



1 Look and read. Color the triangles: انظر وأقرأ ولون المثلثات:

A triangle is a 2D shape with three sides.

المثلث هو شكل ثنائى الأبعاد ذو ثلاثة آضلاع.



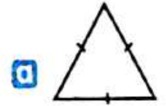
2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

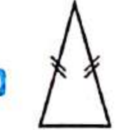
1- An equilateral triangle has three equal sides.

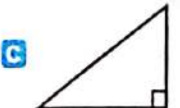
2- A right angle triangle has one angle that measures 90°.

3- An isosceles triangle has two sides of equal length.

4- A scalene triangle has three sides of different length.

a 

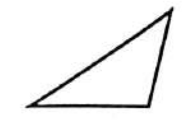
b 

c 

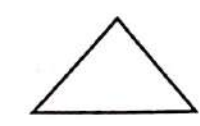
d 

3 Look. Circle the correct triangle type:

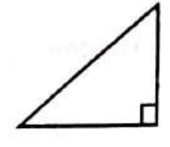
انظر وضع دائرة حول النوع الصحيح للمثلث:



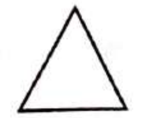
1 right angle / scalene



2 isosceles / equilateral



3 right angle / isosceles



4 equilateral / scalene



Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Hani can do a lot of activities on ....

a vacation b buildings c parks d roofs

2. Hani goes to Alexandria in ....

a winter b fall c summer d spring

3. They stay in a .... in front of the sea.

a beach b hotel c house d park

4. They make sandcastles on the ....

a road b street c beach d hotel

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hana sat on a .... in the park. She enjoyed the beautiful plants.

a bench b city c school d hotel

2. She went to the park, she .... a picnic.

a did b played c made d stayed

3. Everyone knows Adel. He is very ....

a active b famous c expensive d poisonous

4. It was a wonderful city. It was ....

a bad b ugly c awesome d sad

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. you - are - in - the - Why - city? ....

2. to - Park - go - Al-Azhar - Let's. ....

3. wanted - Hadi - to - vacation - on - go. ....

4. thought - I - were - the beach - you - on. ....

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1- seleem felt very happy..............................

2- can you come to the park with us..............................

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

LESSONS 4&5

Writing & Project




استمع إلى المفردات،

Morocco	المغرب
Marrakech	مدينة مراكش (المغرب)
France	فرنسا
Paris	مدينة باريس (عاصمة فرنسا)
Eiffel Tower	برج آيفل (باريس)
the Louvre	متحف اللوفر (باريس)
French	اللغة الفرنسية / شخص فرنسي
sights	معالم سياحية
race	يتسابق
beach buggies	عربات شاطئية
paintings	لوحات
diary	مفكرة يومية

Other words كلمات أخرى



museum	متحف
formal language	اللغة الرسمية
local dishes	أكلات شعبية
chef	طاه / طباخ
perhaps	ربما
a bit	قليلاً
At the end of ...	في نهاية ...
shopping	التسوق
handicrafts	مصنوعات يدوية
stall	كشك
sand dunes	كثبان رملية
metal	معدن
smell	رائحة
snorkeling	الغطس
turtles	سلاحف
still	مازال
home	وطن / موطن
wandering	التجول
trip	رحلة قصيرة

Adjectives صفات



perfect	رائع
hungry	جائع
special	مميز / خاص
traditional	تقليدي
crowded / busy	مزدحم
private	خاص
brightly-colored	ذو ألوان زاهية
cultural	حضاري / ثقافي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
try	يحاول	tried
wait	ينتظر	waited
visit	يزور	visited
remind	يُذَكِّر	reminded
include	يشتمل	included

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
understand	يفهم	understood
speak	يتكلم	spoke
keep up	يجارى	kept up

Study the following

1. We saw some famous sights from the boat.
   - رأينا بعض المعالم السياحية المشهورة من القارب.
2. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal.
   - برج آيفل طويل جدا ومصنوع من المعدن.
3. The Louvre is a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings.
   - اللوفر هو متحف جميل به لوحات رائعة.
4. The French people were very kind.
   - كان الفرنسيون طيبون جدا.
5. When I spoke English, they understood me!
   - عندما تحدثت باللغة الإنجليزية فهموني.
6. At the end of the day, we went to a French restaurant.
   - في نهاية اليوم ذهبنا إلى مطعم للأكلات الفرنسية.
7. There's so much to do.
   - يوجد أشياء كثيرة لتفعلها.
8. Today we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum.
   - ذهبنا اليوم إلى مدرسة علي بن يوسف (متحف جميل).
9. I like it there because it reminds me a bit of Al-Azhar Park at home.
   - أحبها لأنها تذكرني قليلا بحديقة الأزهر في وطني (بلدي مصر).
10. The smells coming from the market stalls make me hungry!
    - الروائح الآتية من الأكشاك الموجودة بالسوق جعلتني جائع.

⑪ We go to the beach to go snorkeling.
- نذهب للشاطيء لكي نمارس رياضة الغطس.

⑫ We race through the sand dunes in beach buggies!
- نتسابق عبر الكثبان الرملية بالعربات الشاطئية.

⑬ Can you keep up?
- هل تستطيع أن تجاري (السباق)؟

⑭ Learn about the city's cultural past with a trip to the museum today.
- تعلم عن حضارة المدينة في الماضي من خلال رحلة إلى المتحف اليوم.

⑮ You can see the chef making the local dishes.
- يمكنك أن ترى الطاهي (الطباخ) يُعد الأكلات الشعبية.



Writing a diary

When you write a diary, you should...	عندما تكتب مفكرة يومية ينبغي أن
Write the date.	تكتب تاريخ اليوم.
Start with "Dear Diary".	تبدأ بـ: مذكراتي العزيزة.
Describe the places / events.	تصف الأماكن والأحداث.
Say how you felt.	تقول ما شعرت به.

1 Read the diary entries. Match the people to the places

اقرأ التدوينات اليومية. صل الناس بالأماكن.



① Marrakech, Morocco

....



② Eiffel Tower, Paris, France

....





استمع إلى النصوص؛

Reem

July 21st

Dear Diary,

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights[1] from the boat, like the Louvre[2], a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings[3], and the Eiffel Tower[4]. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal[5]. I tried to speak French[6], but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood[7] me! At the end of the day we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

Arabic Meaning

١- معالم سياحية
٢- متحف اللوفر
٣- لوحات
٤- برج آيفل
٥- معدن
٦- اللغة الفرنسية
٧- فهم

Amira

April 5th

Dear Diary,

I love this city! There's so much to do. Today we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum that is 800 years old! We went early in the morning, but it was still[1] very busy[2] with people. We also visited Jardin Majorelle[3], a lovely garden where we had a picnic. I like it there because it reminds[4] me a bit of Al-Azhar Park at home. But my favorite place is Jemaa el-Fnaa[5], the market[6] place. The smells[7] coming from the market stalls[8] make me hungry! I had a sandwich yesterday. I can't wait[9] to go back there tomorrow!

Arabic Meaning

١- مازال
٢- مزدحم
٣- حديقة ماجوريل بالمغرب
٤- يذُكر
٥- جامع الفنا
٦- سوق
٧- روائح
٨- أكشاك
٩- ينتظر

Tip!

Write the date when you start a new diary entry.

اكتب التاريخ عندما تبدأ تدوينة يومية جديدة.

2 Read. Check (✓) the statements that apply

اقرأ. ضع (✓) أمام ما يتم تنفيذه من الجمل عند كتابة تدوينه يومية؛

When writing a diary:

1- you should start with "Dear Diary". ☐
2- you should write about how you felt. ☐
3- you should use formal language. ☐
4- you need to remember that other people will read it. ☐
5- you should include personal pronouns like "I" and "me". ☐



3 Read and circle:

اقرأ وضع دائرة:

Read the two diary entries again. Who ...

اقرأ التدوينتين اليومية مرة أخرى. اختر «ريم» أو «أميرة»

1- went on a boat?	Reem	Amira
2- thought somewhere was very crowded?	Reem	Amira
3- went somewhere that was like a place at home?	Reem	Amira
4- saw something beautiful made of metal?	Reem	Amira
5- said that the smell of the food made them hungry?	Reem	Amira
6- ate something made of potatoes for dinner?	Reem	Amira

4 Think of a day when you did something special. Write a diary entry of about 30-40 words:

فكر فى يوم عندما فعلت شيئًا مميزًا . اكتب تدوينه يومية من حوالى ٣٠ - ٤٠ كلمة:

Remember:

- Write the date.
- Start with "Dear Diary".
- Describe the places / events.
- Say how you felt.

Think!

We shouldn't read other people's diaries because they are private. However, do you think it's right to read the diaries of people from the past? Why? Why not?

يجب عليك ألا تقرأ يوميات الآخرين، لأن هذه اليوميات خاصة بهم ولكن هل من الصحيح أن تقرأ اليوميات الخاصة بالآخرين من الماضي فى رأيك لماذا؟ لما لا؟

5 **Read. Do you want to go on this vacation? Why? / Why not?**

اقرأ. هل تريد أن تذهب فى أجازة؟لماذا؟ لما لا؟



استمع إلى النصوص:

My perfect vacation.

Day 1

In the morning, we go to the beach to go snorkeling(1). Swim with the turtles(2) and brightly-colored(3) fish! The afternoon can be spent on the beach with a picnic(4) and a good book.



Arabic Meaning

١- يذهب للغطس
٢- سلاحف
٣- زاهي/ذات ألوان زاهية
٤- طعام للنزهة

Day 2

Today we race(5) through the sand dunes in beach buggies(6)! It's fun and fast! Can you keep up(7)?



Arabic Meaning

٥- يتسابق
٦- عربات شاطئية
٧- يواصل

Day 3

Spend a relaxed day shopping and wandering through(8) the markets. Perhaps(9) buy some traditional handicrafts(10) to take home.



Arabic Meaning

٨- التجول عبر
٩- ربما
١٠- مصنوعات يدوية

Day 4

Learn about the city's cultural(11) past with a trip(12) to the museum today. In the evening, we go to a traditional restaurant where you can see the chef making the local dishes(13).



Arabic Meaning

١١- ثقافي
١٢- رحلة قصيرة
١٣- أكلات شعبية





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We go to the beach to go ....

a snorkeling b shopping c sleeping d wandering

2. Eiffel Tower is made of ....

a wood b metal c plastic d glass

3. We will race today.Can you .... up?

a make b walk c keep d swim

4. The smells coming from my mother's cooking make me ....

a private b hungry c kind d busy

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Walid. I want to have a perfect vacation. My next trip is to Cairo. I love this city! I want to go to the Cairo Tower. It is so tall and made of metal. I want to go to the Egyptian Museum. I will learn a lot about Egypt in the past. I also want to visit Al-Azhar Park. **<u>It</u>** has a lot of fantastic trees and flowers. It sounds interesting! I can't wait to go there soon!

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Cairo Tower is made of ....

a carton b paper c mud d metal

2. The underlined word "It" refers to ....

a Cairo b the Cairo Tower c Egyptian Museum d Al-Azhar Park

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does Walid want to have? ....

4. Where will Walid learn about Egypt in the past? ....

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. the - on - went - I - river.

---

2. you - Can - up - keep?

---

3. some - saw - sights - famous - Magda.

---

4. metal - Eiffel - The - made of - is - Tower.

---

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I .... (have) such a cool day yesterday.
2. Be careful! That snake is.................... (poison).
3. Everyone knows Soha. She is very .... (fame).
4. Reem's birthday is .... (at) January 4th.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1- The french people were very kind

2- do you want to go on vacation

---

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

A race through the sand

Guiding phrases

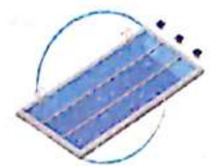
sand dunes - beach buggies



Review

Key vocabulary


hotel
فندق


swimming pool
حمام سباحة


high-rise building
ناطحة سحاب


theme park
ملاهي



ticket
تذكرة


museum
متحف


airport
مطار


tourist
سائح


passport
جواز سفر

traditional	تقليدي
day trip	رحلة في وقت النهار
diary	مفكرة يومية
go on vacation	يذهب في إجازة
a bit low	حزين قليلا
diary entry	تدوينة يومية
wander	يتجول
handicrafts	مصنوعات يدوية
stalls	أكشاك
bench	مقعد طويل
awesome	مذهل
sights	معالم سياحية
race	يتسابق
beach buggies	عربات شاطئية
paintings	لوحات
Morocco	دولة المغرب
Eiffel Tower	برج آيفل
the Louvre	متحف اللوفر (باريس)



Other words كلمات أخرى

luckily	لحسن الحظ
flight	رحلة جوية
vacation	إجازة / عطلة
footprints	آثار القدم
banks	ضفاف
leaflet	منشور
tour	جولة
chance	فرصة
destination	جهة الوصول
mud	وحل / طين
exploring	استكشاف
trading center	مركز تجاري
citadel	قلعة
suddenly	فجأة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
relax	يسترخي	relaxed
harvest	يحصد	harvested
check in	يسجل وصول	checked in
head out	يتوجه إلى	headed out
float	يطفو	floated
walk around	يتجول حول	walked around
discover	يكتشف	discovered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
spend	يقضي (وقت)	spent
fly	يطير / يسافر جوا	flew
take photos	يلتقط صور	took photos
drive	يقود (سيارة)	drove



Grammar قواعد لغوية

Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

1 on

◎ نستخدم حرف الجر on قبل أيام الأسبوع والمناسبات الخاصة والتواريخ المحددة:

- I don't go to a school on Fridays.
- I am having a party on my birthday.
- I was born on July 6th, 2010.

2 at

◎ نستخدم حرف الجر at قبل الوقت وبعض العبارات:

- The train to Aswan leaves at 8 pm. / at lunchtime / night / midnight

3 in



◎ نستخدم حرف الجر in قبل الشهور وفصول السنة والسنوات وأيضا أوقات اليوم:

- My birthday is in June.
- I was born in 2010.
- in the afternoon / evening

◎ لاحظ إذا جاء رقم بعد الشهر نستخدم on لأن هنا نقصد اليوم:

- My birthday is on October 11th.



Pronunciation

◎ لاحظ الفرق بين الأصوات /θ/ و /ð/:

The sounds /θ/		The sounds /ð/	
thing	شيء	these	هؤلاء
Thursday	يوم الخميس	those	أولئك
think	يعتقد	this	هذا
three	ثلاثة	with	مع
Earth	الأرض	mother	أم
author	مؤلف		



مهارات الكتابة

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words.

Lesson 2

What you do at different times

1. On Thursdays, I can do my things at different times. I go swimming at seven am. I always take my swimming shorts. I go to the park at twelve am. Then, I go to the museum at two o'clock. I enjoy my day.

Lessons 4&5

A race through the sand

2. I like racing through the sand dunes in beach buggies. It's fun and fast. I go with my friends. It's exciting and safe. I go there every week. I enjoy my time there. This is my perfect vacation.

Activity - Unit 11

Things to do on vacation

3. On vacations, I learn new things. My father took us to the Egyptian Museum. We saw fantastic statues there. The statues are made of gold or rocks. We knew many things and enjoyed a lot. I want to go there again.

Al-Azhar Exercises



الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع واختر:

1. Ali is a .... (doctor - farmer - teacher)
2. Ali grows .... (grapes - vegetables - bananas)
3. Ali grows vegetables and keeps .... (animals - birds - bees)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue: أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

snorkeling - sandcastles - would - beach

A: Where ------------------------------ you like to go?

B: I want to go to the ------------------------------.

A: Do you want to go ------------------------------ ?

B: Yes. I want to make ------------------------------, too.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Hamza visited the zoo last weekend. He went with his family by bus. He saw a lot of animals there. He fed the elephant and the giraffe. He took photos with them. He liked his vacation.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Hamza go last weekend?

----

2. How did Hamza go to the zoo?

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. Hamza fed the ------------ and the giraffe. (lion - elephant - deer)

4. Hamza took ---- with the elephant and the giraffe. (carrots - lakes - photos)

5. Hamza liked his ------------. (football - vacation - school)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. My birthday is ------------ Monday.

   a in   b on   c at

2. I put my clothes in a --------.

   a museum   b suitcase   c picnic

3. This watch is very ---------.

   a active   b expensive   c creative

4. My family wanted to go on ---------.

   a suitcase   b vacation   c passport

5. I get up ----------- 7 am.

   a in   b on   c at

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. feeling - bit - I'm - low - a.

----

2. suitcase - She's - her - packing.

----

3. perfect - This - my - vacation.

----

4. fly - When - they - from - did - Cairo?

----

5. go - swimming - at - I - o'clock - seven.





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Ramy and Adam are ....
 a brothers b cousins c students d friends
2. Ramy and Adam are in primary ....
 a 5 b 4 c 6 d 3
3. Ramy likes playing football after school on ....
 a Monday b Thursday c Saturday d Wednesday
4. Adam goes .... on Friday.
 a cycling b swimming c shopping d sleeping

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We need a .... to travel to different countries.
 a basket b ride c passport d pool
2. Mom sat on a .... in Al-Azhar Park.
 a bench b beach c ticket d flight
3. We .... through the sand dunes in beach buggies.
 a race b relax c find d put
4. You can have fun and go on different rides at the ....
 a sand dunes b theme park c museum d airport

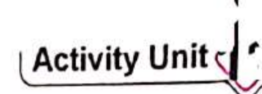
3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

checked - warm - landed - degrees - traditional

Last year, we visited Amman. We went there by plane. The plane (1) .... at 4 o'clock. It was about 26 (2) .... and I was surprised that it was (3) .... in October. We went to our hotel and (4) .... in. It was a comfortable hotel.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة





4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Reda. I want to spend my next weekend in the Orman Garden. It is one of the most famous botanical gardens in Egypt. It is located in Giza. The garden has a lot of beautiful trees and flowers. It has a spring festival every year. The Spring Festival usually starts in March and it is an important Egyptian cultural event in spring. The festival usually lasts for a month. It will be a good vacation.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

1. The Spring Festival usually starts in ....

   a July   b March   c May   d June

2. Reda will have a .... vacation .

   a bad   b useless   c boring   d good

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does Reda want? ----------------------------------
4. Where is the Orman Garden located? ----------------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. does - **When** - land - flight - our? ----------------------------------
2. snorkeling - **We** - going - the weekend - on - are. ----------------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Amman is a really busy.............................. (**on**) night.
2. I was born.............................. (**in**) August 15th.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

did you visit Al-Azhar Park at night ----------------------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Things to do on vacation

Guiding phrases

Egyptian museum - fantastic statues

Unit

12 Fiction Reader

A Fantastic Family Adventure

مغامرة عائلية رائعة



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. To read and understand a story. ١ - يقرأ الطالب ويفهم قصة.
2. To enjoy reading in English. ٢ - يستمتع الطالب بالقراءة باللغة الإنجليزية.
3. To identify characters in a story. ٣ - يتعرف الطالب على شخصيات قصة.
4. To identify the key events and vocabulary in a story. ٤ - يتعرف الطالب على الأحداث الرئيسية والمفردات في قصة.
5. To review the story and check understanding. ٥ - يراجع الطالب القصة ويتأكد من فهمه لها.
6. To put events from a story in order. ٦ - يرتب أحداث من القصة بشكل صحيح.
7. To examine the characters in a story. ٧ - يختبر الطالب في شخصيات القصة.
8. To retell the story. ٨ - يعيد الطالب رواية القصة.



★ Vocabulary



Characters of the Reader

شخصيات القصة



Dad

الأب



Mom

الأم



Ramy

رامى



Malak

ملك



Grandpa

الجد



Grandma

الجدة



Uncle Youssef

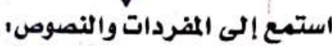
العم يوسف



Picture Dictionary
قاموس الصور









dinosaur الديناصور

Dinosaurs were very big animals which lived millions of years ago.

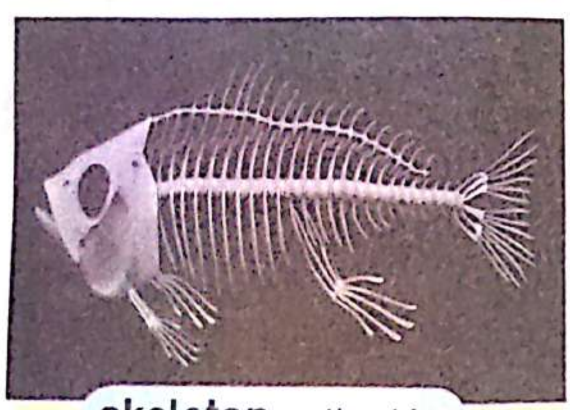
كانت الديناصورات حيوانات ضخمة عاشت منذ ملايين السنين.



bones العظام

Our body has many bones to help us stand up.

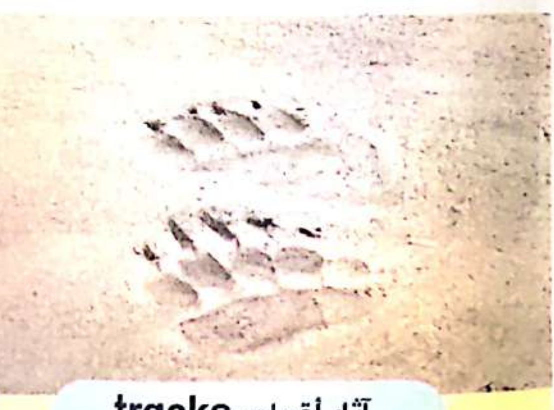
جسمنا به عظاماً عديدة لتساعدنا على الوقوف.



skeleton هيكل عظمى

Fish and other animals have a skeleton made of bones inside their bodies.

تمتلك الأسماك والحيوانات الأخرى هيكل عظمي داخل أجسادهما.



tracks آثار أقدام

Animals' feet leave tracks on the ground where they walked.

تترك أقدام الحيوانات آثارًا علي الأرض التي ساروا عليها.



binoculars المنظار
نظارة مكبرة / معظمة

She likes looking at things in the distance with her binoculars.

تحب النظر إلى الأشياء البعيدة بالمنظار الخاص بها.



ibex الوعل

An ibex is a type of desert animal like a gazelle.

الوعل هو حيوان صحراوى مثل الغزال.



archaeologist عالم آثار

An archaeologist is someone who digs underground to find objects from many years ago and studies them.

عالم الآثار هو الشخص الذي يحفر تحت الأرض للعثور علي أشياء من سنوات عديدة ويدرسها.



archaeological dig حفر آثرى

An archaeological dig is when people work together to find something under the ground.

ينشيء الحفر الأثري عندما يعمل الناس معًا للعثور على شيء ما تحت الأرض.





The Reader
القصة



استمع الى نص القصة

1



Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard[1]. Suddenly Dad calls them from the house.

"Hey kids, come and see this story in the newspaper[2]!"

The children run inside to see. Dad says, "Look. They found something amazing[3] near Grandma and Grandpa's village."

يلعب رامي وملك في الفناء. فجأة ينادي عليهم والدهم من المنزل.

"يا أولاد ، تعالوا وشاهدوا هذه القصة في الجريدة!"

يركض الأولاد إلى الداخل ليروا. يقول والدهم "انظروا. لقد وجدوا شيئًا رائعًا بالقرب من قرية جدكم وجدتكم."

"What is it. Dad?" asks Ramy."It looks scary[4]!"

Dad says, "No Ramy, it's not scary at all. It's the skeleton[5] of a dinosaur[6]. A group of archaeologists[7] found it. And your uncle Youssef is one of those archaeologists!"

يسأل رامي "ما هذا يا أبي؟ إنه يبدو مخيفًا!"

يقول الأب "لا يا رامي، إنه ليس مخيفًا على الإطلاق. إنه هيكل عظمي لديناصور. عثر عليه مجموعة من علماء الآثار. وعمك يوسف واحداً من هؤلاء."

1- yard	فناء	2- newspaper	جريدة	3- amazing	مذهل	4- scary	مخيف
5- skeleton	هيكل عظمى	6- dinosaur	ديناصور	7- archaeologists	علماء آثار		







That's awesome(1), Dad!" says Malak. "The dinosaur skeleton is really old, isn't it?"

"Yes, that's right, Malak "says Dad. "It's about 98 million years old!"

"Wow! Uncle Youssef has got a really interesting(2) job, hasn't he?" says Ramy.

"Yes, he has. And his work is important(3) too. It helps us learn about the past." says Dad.

تقول ملك "هذا رائع يا أبي! الهيكل العظمي للديناصور قديم حقًا، أليس كذلك؟"

يقول الأب "نعم، هذا صحيح يا ملك. يصل عمره إلى حوالي ٩٨ مليون عام!"

يقول رامي "رائع! يعمل العم يوسف في وظيفة ممتعة حقًا، أليس كذلك؟"

يقول الأب "نعم، هو كذلك. وعمله مهم أيضًا. إنه يساعدنا في التعرف على الماضي."

1- awesome رائع	2- interesting شيق	3- important مهم

A Fantastic Family Adventure

3



Later that evening Ramy and his family are having dinner.

Dad says, "Do you want to go there the next time we go to Grandma's house?"

في وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء يتناول رامي وعائلته العشاء.

يقول الأب "هل تريد الذهاب إلى هناك عندما نذهب إلى منزل جدتك في المرة القادمة؟"

Ramy says, "That's a great idea, Dad. It would be an adventure(1) to go into the desert!"

Mom says, "There's a beautiful nature trail(2) there. Why don't we walk that together?"

"Oh yes please. Mom! I love nature." says Malak.

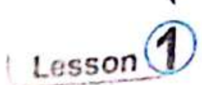
يقول رامي "هذه فكرة رائعة يا أبي. الذهاب إلى الصحراء سيكون مغامرة!"

تقول الأم "يوجد ممشى (درب) طبيعي جميل هناك. لماذا لا نسير فيه معًا؟"

تقول ملك "نعم من فضلك يا أمي! أحب الطبيعة."

1- adventure	مغامرة	2- nature trail	ممشى (درب) طبيعي









"Ramy! Malak!" Grandma calls. She is so excited[1] to see her grandchildren[2].

"I have prepared your favorite things - feteer[3] and mint tea![4] Come inside and eat."

تنادي الجدة "رامي! ملك!" إنها متحمسة للغاية لرؤية أحفادها.

"أعددت أشيائكم المفضلة - فطير وشاي بالنعناع! تعالوا إلى الداخل وتناولوا الطعام."

"Hello," says Grandpa to Mom and Dad. "It's so good to see you."

"It's lovely to be here," says Dad. "Tomorrow we want to take the children on a nature trail."

يقول الجد لأمي وأبي "مرحبا. انه من الجيد رؤيتكم."

يقول أبي "من الرائع أن نكون هنا. نريد غدا أن نأخذ الأولاد إلى الممشى (الدرب) الطبيعي."

"Excellent," says Grandpa. "There's lots to see in our area. It's a beautiful place."

يقول الجد "ممتاز. هناك الكثير لنروه في منطقتنا. إنه مكان جميل."

1- excited	متحمس/مسرور	2- grandchildren	أحفاد	3- feteer	فطير	4- mint tea	شاي بالنعناع



5



The next morning everyone is happy. They are ready to walk the nature trail. They are wearing hats, scarves, and sunglasses.

في صباح اليوم التالي الجميع سعداء. إنهم مستعدون للسير في الممشى (الدرب) الطبيعى. إنهم يرتدون القبعات والأوشحة ونظارات الشمس.

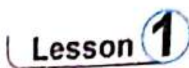
They have snacks and water in their backpacks[1]. Mom has some binoculars[2] too. She wants to look at the amazing birds that live here. They are in a beautiful part of Egypt with many types of rare[3] animals.

لديهم وجبات خفيفة وماء فى حقائب الظهر الخاصة بهم. أمي لديها منظار (نظارة مكبرة) أيضًا. إنها تريد أن تنظر إلى الطيور الرائعة التي تعيش هنا. إنهم في جزء جميل من مصر حيث يحتوي علي العديد من أنواع الحيوانات النادرة.

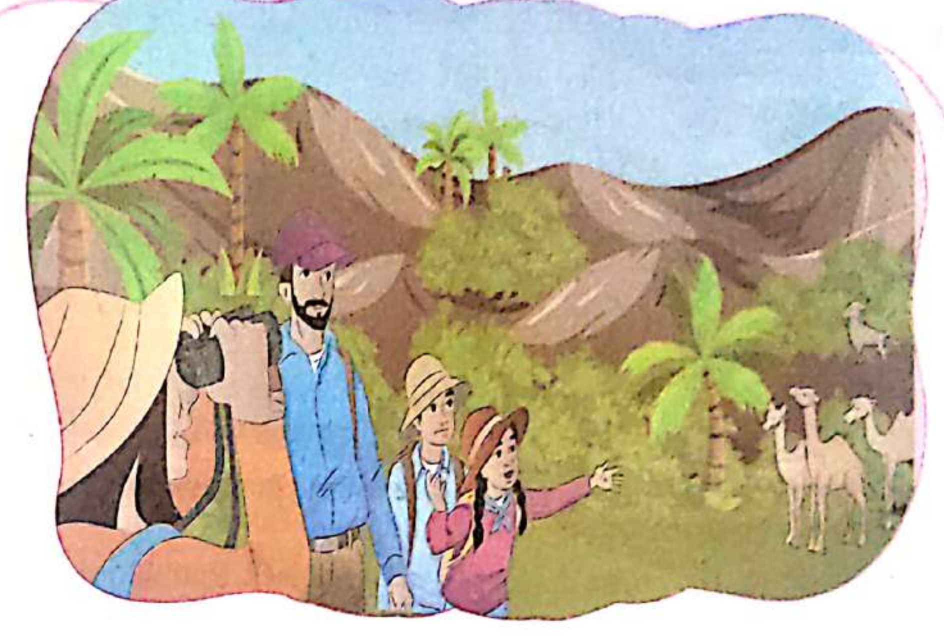
1- backpacks	حقائب ظهر	2- binoculars	منظار (نظارة مكبرة)	3- rare	نادر











It's a lovely warm day, not too hot. It's a perfect[1] day for walking. There are cactus[2] plants and palm trees and they see sheep and some camels.

إنه يوم جميل ودافئ. ليس شديد الحرارة. إنه يوم مثالي للمشي. يوجد نباتات الصبار والنخيل وهم يشاهدون الخراف وبعض الجمال.

Malak is very pleased because she loves animals. "Please walk quietly and carefully everyone." she says."If we are quiet, we could see a fennec fox[3], or a dorcas gazelle[4], or maybe a sand cat."

تشعر ملك بسعادة بالغة لأنها تحب الحيوانات. تقول "أرجو من الجميع المشي بهدوء وبعناية. عندما نكون هادئين، يمكننا مشاهدة ثعلب الفنك أو غزال دوركاس أو ربما قطة الرمال."

The family continue along the trail. Ramy sees animals' tracks[5] in the sand.

Dad takes a photo of a fennec fox. Mom sees many beautiful birds. Everyone is enjoying the trail.

تواصل العائلة السير على طول الممشى. يشاهد رامي آثار أقدام الحيوانات في الرمال. يلتقط أبي صوراً لثعلب الفنك. تشاهد أمي العديد من الطيور الجميلة. الجميع يستمتع بالممشى.

1- perfect	مثالي	2- cactus	نبات الصبار	3- fennec fox	ثعلب الفنك
4- dorcas gazelle	غزال دوركاس	5- tracks	آثار أقدام		





Then Mom says."Hey everyone. I have something in my shoe. Can we stop for a minute?"
She sits down. The others drink some water and wait. Ramy looks down at the rocks near the path. He sees some strange shapes inside them.

ثم تقول الأم: "مرحبًا بالجميع. لدي شيء في حذائي. هل يمكننا التوقف لدقيقة؟"
تجلس الأم. يشرب الآخرون بعض الماء وينتظرون. ينظر رامي للأسفل إلى الصخور بالقرب من الطريق. يرى بعض الأشكال الغريبة بداخلها.

"Look!" he says."What are these things in the rocks, Dad?"

"I don't know," says Dad."They look like bones[1] ..."

"We are very near the place they found the dinosaur skeleton," says Mom. "Maybe they are dinosaur bones!"

" يقول رامى"أنظر! ما هذه الأشياء في الصخور يا أبي؟

يقول الأب "لا أعرف. تبدو مثل العظام."

تقول الأم "نحن قريبون جدًا من المكان الذي وجدوا فيه الهيكل العظمي للديناصور. ربما تكون عظام ديناصور."

Ramy is very excited."Let's ask Uncle Youssef!" he says."Dad, can we call him?"

"Yes, of course." says Dad.

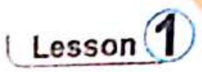
Uncle Youssef is very interested in[2] the rocks Ramy found. He tells Dad to take some photographs[3] of them and meet him at Grandma's house for dinner.

رامي متحمس جدًا ويقول "لنسأل العم يوسف! هل يمكن أن نتصل به يا أبي؟"

يقول الأب "نعم بالطبع."

العم يوسف مهتم جدًا بالصخور التي وجدها رامي. يخبر أبي أن يلتقط بعض الصور لهم وأن يلتقي به في منزل جدتي على العشاء.

1- bones	عظام	2- interested in	مهتم بـ	3- photographs	صور فوتوغرافية







Later that evening Dad shows Uncle Youssef the photos and Ramy shows him the place on the map. Uncle Youssef asks the family to go back there with him the next day.

في وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء، يعرض أبي الصور على العم يوسف ويوضح له رامي المكان على الخريطة. يطلب العم يوسف من العائلة العودة معه هناك في اليوم التالي.





The next day they go back along the trail. They find Ramy's rocks and Uncle Youssef looks at them carefully.

في اليوم التالي يعودون على امتداد الممشى. يعثروا على صخور رامي و ينظر عمه يوسف اليهم بعناية.

"They are not dinosaur bones in the rocks," says Uncle Youssef. "But they are certainly[1] very old. They are probably from a type of ancient ibex that doesn't exist[2] now."

يقول العم يوسف "لا يوجد عظام ديناصور في الصخور. لكنها بالتأكيد قديمة جدًا. ربما هي عظام لنوع قديم من من أنواع الوعل والغير موجود الآن."

Ramy is disappointed[3] because the bones are not from a dinosaur. But Uncle Youssef says, "Well done Ramy for finding them! It is important to take time to look at the world around us and watch things - just like an archaeologist! Now, would you all like to come to the dig and see my dinosaur skeleton?" "Yes please, Uncle Youssef!" say Ramy and Malak.

يصاب رامي بخيبة أمل لأن العظام ليست عظام ديناصور. لكن العم يوسف يقول "أحسنت يا رامي في العثور عليها! من المهم أن تخصص بعض من وقتك في النظر إلى العالم من حولك ومشاهدة الأشياء - تمامًا مثل عالم الآثار! الآن، هل ترغبون جميعًا في القدوم إلى عملية التنقيب ورؤية الهيكل العظمي للديناصور الذي وجدته؟"
يقول رامي وملك "نعم من فضلك يا عمي يوسف!"

1- certainly	بالتأكيد	2- doesn't exist	غير موجود	3- disappointed	محبط

10



"Here it is," says Uncle Youssef. "What do you think?"
"Wow!" says Ramy."It's amazing to think it lived millions of years ago."
"And that its bones were under the ground for such a long time." says Malak.

"In fact, we found the skeleton because of climate change(1)." says Uncle Youssef.

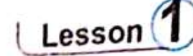
يقول العم يوسف "ها هو، ما رأيكم؟"
يقول رامي "رائع! إنه لأمر مدهش أن تتخيل أنه عاش منذ ملايين السنين."
تقول ملك "وأن عظامه كانت تحت الأرض لمثل هذه الفترة الطويلة."
يقول العم يوسف "في الواقع، وجدنا الهيكل العظمي بسبب تغير المناخ."

"Now there is less rain and fewer plants. This means the ground is dry(2) and the wind can blow(3) away the sand. Things that were under the ground come to the surface(4). That's good for archaeologists but bad for the planet(5)."

"الآن هناك أمطار أقل ونباتات أقل. وهذا يعني أن الأرض جافة ويمكن للرياح أن تعصف بالرمال." "الأشياء التي كانت تحت الأرض تظهر على السطح. هذا جيد لعلماء الآثار ولكنه سيء للكوكب."

1- climate change	تغير المناخ	2- dry	جاف	3- blow	تعصف / تهب (للرياح)
4- surface	سطح	5- planet	كوكب		









"Later everyone is getting ready to go home.

"Thanks for showing us the dinosaur, Uncle Youssef." says Ramy" "It was so interesting. I would love to be an archaeologist. It's such a cool job!."

في وقت لاحق يستعد الجميع للعودة إلى المنزل.

يقول رامي "شكرًا للسماح برؤية الديناصور يا عم يوسف. لقد كان شيقاً للغاية. أريد أن أصبح عالم آثار. ياله من عمل رائع!"

"It's fascinating[1] work, but it's hard," says Uncle Youssef. "Sometimes we look for years and don't find anything."

"We can help if you're looking for other dinosaurs!" says Malak.

يقول العم يوسف "إنه عمل رائع، لكنه شاق". "في بعض الأحيان نبحث لسنوات ولا نجد شيئاً." تقول ملك "يمكننا المساعدة إذا كنت تبحث عن ديناصورات أخرى!"

"Thanks for all the delicious[2] food." says Mom." It was lovely to see you both again."

"Thank you dear. Come back and see us soon." says Grandma.

تقول الأم "شكرًا على كل الطعام اللذيذ. كان من الرائع أن أراكما مرة أخرى."

تقول الجدة "شكرًا لك عزيزتي. تعالى لزيارتنا قريبًا."

1- fascinating	رائع	2- delicious	لذيذ





A Fantastic Family Adventure

12



"So, did you enjoy our trip?" asks Mom in the car.

"Yes, I thought it was fantastic." says Ramy. "Me too!" says Malak.

تسأل الأم في السيارة "إذن، هل استمتعتما برحلتنا؟"

يقول رامي "نعم، اعتقد أنها كانت رائعة." تقول ملك "وأنا أيضًا!"

"What do you think you learned from it?" asks Dad.

Ramy says, "I learned it's important to look around us carefully and notice things in our environment[1]."

"Yes, that is how you can discover[2] interesting things." adds Malak.

"You're right, kids" says Dad."Well done!"

يسأل الأب "ماذا تعلمتما منها في رأيكما؟"

يقول رامي "تعلمت أنه من المهم أن ننظر حولنا بعناية وأن نلاحظ الأشياء في بيئتنا."

تضيف ملك "نعم، هذه هي الطريقة التي يمكنك من خلالها اكتشاف أشياء مثيرة للاهتمام."

يقول الأب "أنتم على حق يا أولاد، أحسنتم!"

1- environment	البيئة	2- discover	نستكشف





★ Characters
★ Vocabulary

1 Label the people with the names in the box:

اكتب أسماء الشخصيات من القائمة تحت الصور:

Mom - Ramy - Grandma - Grandpa - Dad - Malak - Uncle Youssef

1 

Uncle Youssef

2 

....

3 

....

4 

....

5 

....

6 

....

7 

....

2 Read. Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false sentences in your notebook

إقرأ. قرر إذا كانت الجمل صحيحة أم خطأ. صحح الجمل الخطأ:

1. Mom sees the story about the dinosaur skeleton in the newspaper. (F)

   Dad sees the story about the dinosaur skeleton in the newspaper.

2. The dinosaur skeleton is near their house. (   )
3. Uncle Youssef is a farmer. (   )
4. Mom loves looking at birds. (   )
5. Ramy finds dinosaur bones. (   )
6. They go to Uncle Youssef's office. (   )

3 **Complete the puzzle with words from the story. What's the word in yellow?**

أكمل اللغز بكلمات من القصة. ما هي الكلمة باللون الأصفر؟

1 2 3 4

1
2
3
4
a
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12

12

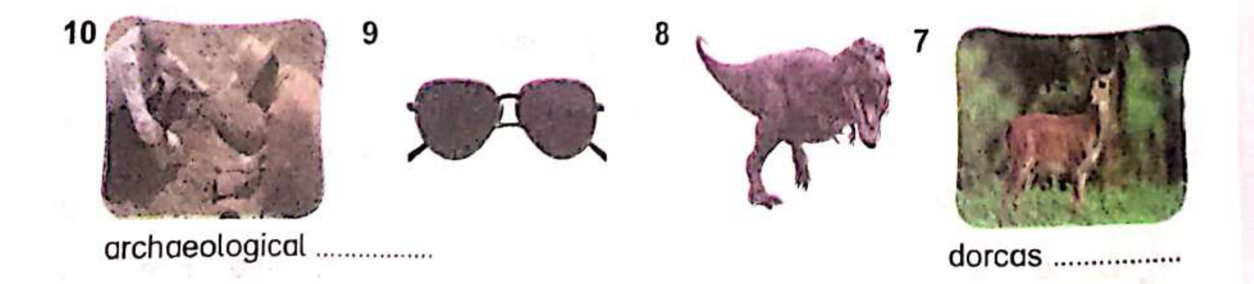
mint................

5

11

6

fennec ....



archaeological ....

dorcas ....



Lesson 3 ★ Events in the story

1 Look and number in order: أنظر ورقم بالترتيب:

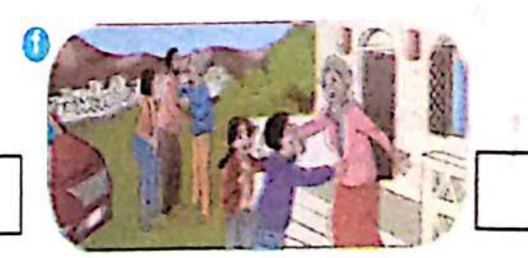
a  ☐

b  ☐

c  ☐

d  1

e  ☐

f  ☐

2 Read and match to make sentences: إقرأ وصل لتكوين جمل:

A	B
1 Dad reads a story	a. live near the archaeological dig.
2 The children's grandparents	b. the family to the dig.
3 Ramy finds old bones	c. about a dinosaur in the newspaper.
4 Uncle Youssef invites	d. an archaeologist in the future.
5 Ramy wants to be	e. in some rocks near the trail.

3 Work with a partner. Retell the story by looking at the pictures in Exercise 1 and using your answers to Exercise 2. What is your favorite scene? Why?

عل مع زميلك. أعد سرد القصة بالنظر إلى الصور في التمرين ١ واستخدام الإجابات
ـ التمرين ٢. ما هو مشهدك المفضل؟ لماذا؟

4 Read and complete the story summary with the words in the box:

إقرأ وأكمل ملخص القصة بالكلمات في القائمة:

ibex - rocks - next - trail - invites - dig - fun - Dad - skeleton - Grandma

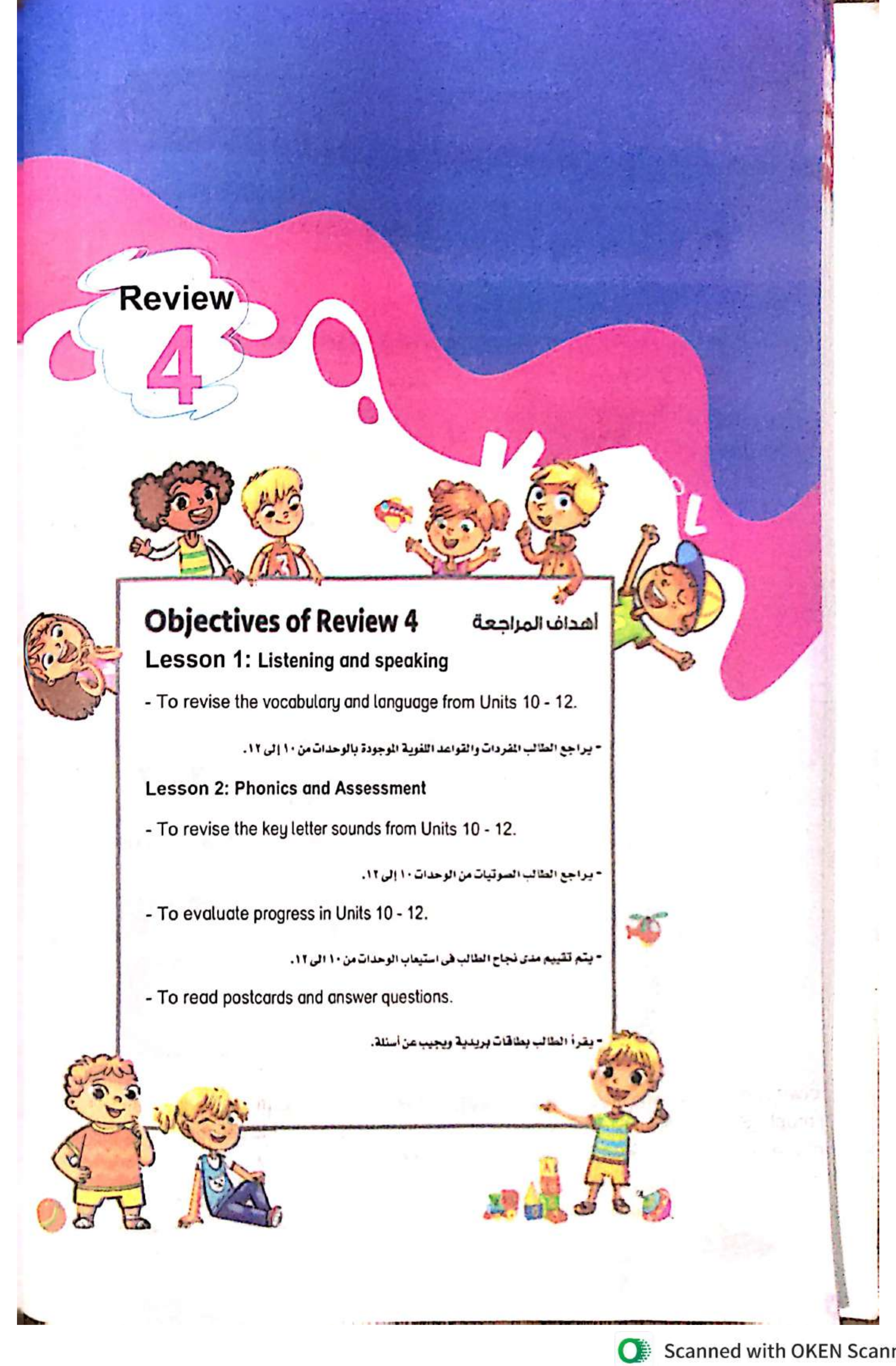
At home, Dad reads a newspaper story about a dinosaur (2) .... He's very excited because Uncle Youssef is working on the archaeological (3) .... At dinnertime, he suggests to the family that they visit (4) ...., who lives near the dig. The family loves the idea and they travel to see them the (5) .... day. Grandma and Grandpa are very happy to see them. The family go on a nature (6) .... and see lots of beautiful animals and birds. Ramy sees some bones in the (7) .... and he thinks they are dinosaur bones. Uncle Youssef checks the rocks and says they are not dinosaur bones, but probably from an (8) .... He says it is a very good thing that Ramy is taking time to notice things on the trail. He also (9) .... them to go to his archaeological dig, which they think is a lot of (10) ....

5 Work with a partner. Discuss the questions:

إعمل مع زميلك. ناقش الأسئلة:

1. Why is it important to look carefully at the world around you?
2. What information can archaeology give us?
3. Why is archaeology an important activity in Egypt?
4. Why are dinosaur skeletons interesting? What can they tell us?





Review 4

Objectives of Review 4

أهداف المراجعة

Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 10 - 12.

- يراجع الطالب المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ١٠ إلى ١٢.

Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 10 - 12.

- يراجع الطالب الصوتيات من الوحدات ١٠ إلى ١٢.

- To evaluate progress in Units 10 - 12.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح الطالب فى استيعاب الوحدات من ١٠ الى ١٢.

- To read postcards and answer questions.

- يقرأ الطالب بطاقات بريدية ويجيب عن أسئلة.

Lesson 1 ★ Units 10 , 11 & 12

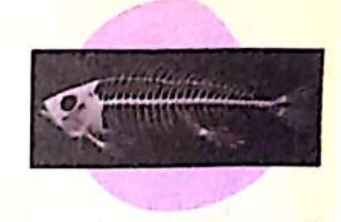
1 **Write the missing letters. Listen and check:**

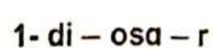
أكتب الحروف الناقصة.،











1- di – osa – r

2- pas – p – – t

3- ske – – to –







4- t – ac – s

5- bin – cu – ars

6- s – – tcase





7- ar – hae – – ogist

8- st – t – – n

2 Complete the conversation with the sentences in the box:

أكمل المحادثة باستخدام الجمل:

Wear your jacket, please.
Don't forget to bring your swimming shorts.
Go straight to the end of the road

Conversation 1

Rania: Excuse me, where's the shopping mall, please?

Rabab: ________________________________, and then turn left.

Conversation 2

Basel: It's really cold outside.

Dad: You're right. ________________________________

Conversation 3

Sherif: I can't wait for tomorrow's trip to the beach!

Hazem: ________________________________. We'll have a great time!

3 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A lot of wonderful **paintings / factories** are in the museums.

   ____

2. Tourists like to see the amazing **monuments / beaches** in Luxor.

   ____

3. We will take a **relaxing / fixing** boat trip on the River Nile.

   ____

4. I like the **bad / delicious** food my mother usually cooks.

   ____

4 Read and match:

إقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 I will send you another email	a. inside the school library.
2 My brother usually	b. through the streets of Khan Al-Khalili.
3 Tourists like to wander	c. when I arrive in London.
4 Don't make noise	d. does his homework carefully.



Lesson 2 ★ Units 10 , 11 & 12

1 Listen and complete with the correct sound:

استمع وأكمل بالصوت الصحيح:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. ba - - room
2. enj - -
3. wr - t -
4. gr - -
5. pl - -
6. mo - - er

2 Read. Match the places (1–3) to the postcards (a–c):

اقرأ. وصل الاماكن (١-٣) بالبطاقات البريدية (C - a):

1. a busy city ☐ 2. a desert ☐ 3. a village ☐

a. Hi Magdy,
I'm having a lovely time here. It's peaceful and very quiet, especially at night. There are a few shops and houses. There is only one restaurant, but it's great! Everyone who lives here is really friendly.
Bye!
Ali

b. Hello Rabab,
How are you? I'm having a real adventure here. We arrived on the weekend and set up our tent. It's quite difficult to sleep in a tent on sand! At night, we sit around a fire. (It gets really cold here at night). xq sing songs and eat delicious food, which we cook on the fire. You can see a million stars! It's beautiful.
See you next week,
Sahar

c. Hi Ghada,
We arrived on Monday, and we haven't stopped! There is so much to see here. We visited some museums and the theater, and we had an amazing tour of famous places. It's really fun, but very busy and crowded.
See you soon,
Randa

3 Circle the correct words:

ضع دائرة على الكلمات الصحيحة،

1. We flew to Alexandria **at / in /** on Monday.
2. Our flight leaves **at / in /on** 8 am.
3. Many people leave the city **at / in / on** the summer.
4. We are going to the park **at / in / on** the afternoon.
5. Her cousins usually visit her **at / in / on** July.

4 Check (√) the sentences are correct. Rewrite the sentences that are incorrect:

ضع (√) على الجمل الصحيحة. واعد كتابة الجمل الغيرصحيحة،

1. I went to ride the train from Cairo Airport. ☐
2. Shahinaz needed a big suitcase to put all her clothes in for the next trip. ☐
3. The hotel we stayed in had large, sunny rooms. ☐
4. I couldn't see the birds in the sky well, so I used my tickets. ☐
5. The library had lots of dinosaur skeletons and bones for us to see. ☐

5 Imagine you are on holiday in one of the places 1-3 in Exercise 2. Write a postcard of 30 words to a friend. Think about:

تخيل أنك فى إجازة فى أحد الأماكن فى التمرين ٢ . أكتب بطاقة بريدية من ٣٠ كلمة لصديق،

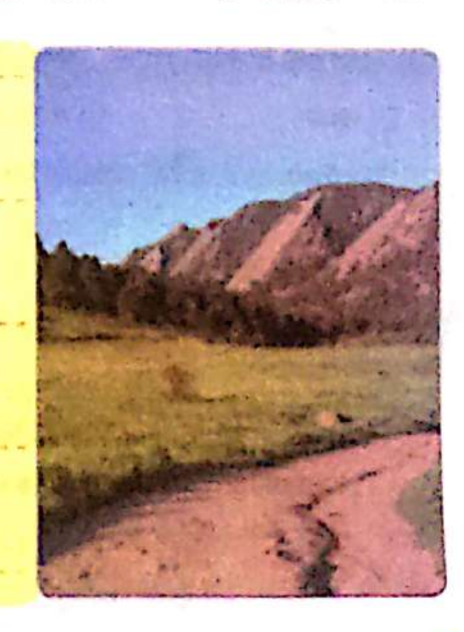
☐ where you are ....

☐ how you traveled ....

☐ who you are there with ....

☐ what you did yesterday ....

☐ why you like the place ....



on Units (10,11 & 12)





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. I went to .... in the summer.
   a Luxor b Alexandria c Cairo d Aswan
2. I stayed in a ....
   a house b park c hotel d street
3. I saw a lot of .... in the hotel.
   a friends b tourists c students d players
4. I took my swimming suit and ....
   a pens b sunglasses c umbrellas d books

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. There are a lot of .... in the museum.
   a factories b beaches c paintings d stations
2. I .... my suitcase yesterday.
   a baked b packed c ate d played
3. Tourists like to .... through the streets of Khan Al-Khalili.
   a read b wander c fix d invite
4. Don't make .... inside the school library.
   a cakes b noise c trips d paintings

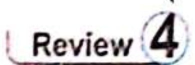
3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

cold - sand - tent - fire - stars

I'm Hazem. I go to the desert every year. I usually set up our (1) .... It's quite difficult to sleep in a tent on (2) .... At night, we sit around a (3) .... It gets really (4) .... here at night.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة



4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Libraries are important places. We go to the library to read and learn a lot of useful information. There are many rules to follow in the library. We shouldn't eat or drink in the library. We should keep it clean and put the books we use on the shelves. We should be quiet, too. If we need any help, we can ask the librarian to help us.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "it" refers to the ....

   a information   b library   c book   d librarian

2. We should be .... in the library.

   a noisy   b amazed   c quiet   d bored

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why do we go to the library? ....
4. Who should you ask for help in the library? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - from - Who - Alexandria? ....
2. sees - tracks - Ramy - in - animals' - the sand. ....

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

will your next class start at 10 pm ....

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Is your father's birthday .... (in) Wednesday?
2. .... (Keeps) quiet in the library.

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Al-Azhar Park

Guiding phrases

is in Cairo - fantastic place

....

....

....



General Tests

امتحانات المحافظات على منهج الفصل الدراسي الثاني

1 محافظة القاهرة

إدارة السلام التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. My uncle is a/an ....

   a doctor b scientist c archaeologist d vet

2. My uncle traveled to .... for work.

   a Egypt b Italy c Africa d London

3. My uncle likes doing experiments on .... in the desert.

   a birds b animals c lizards d dinosaurs

4. The people were very ....

   a friendly b unkind c nervous d creative

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We catch the train at the ....

   a station b factory c library d post office

2. Always .... quiet inside the school library.

   a keep b do c tell d throw

3. Go .... ahead onto North Road.

   a street b straight c stay d stairs

4. New Alamein is a city on the ....

   a desert b grassland c beach d snow

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

upside - fridge - hiding - night - dark

I'm doing a project on bats at school. I want to see them, but they were all (1) .... I couldn't see them in the (2) .... They fly at (3) .... They sleep (4) .... down on trees.





4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Ali had a bad day yesterday. He went to the club but only five of his friends came. They had problems. His friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. And Amr had an earache from swimming. Two of his friends had a cold. His cousin Sarah went to the dentist because she had a toothache. Ali was very worried about his friends.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about Ali's..........................
   a parents b family c friends d sisters
2. Ali was very..........................about his friends.
   a happy b worried c unfair d tired

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where did Ali go yesterday? ....
4. Why did Sarah go to the dentist? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. with - share - I - a room - my - brother. ....
2. drink - water - You - plenty - should - of. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:(مجاب عنه اخر الكتاب)

1. Can I .... (having) some medicine, please?
2. We .... (can't) drive a car, but now we can.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

when did ahmed go to Alexandria? ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your new apartment

Guiding phrases

three bedrooms - living room with a balcony

....

....

....



إدارة أوسيم التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. I like eating honey for ....
   a dinner b lunch c breakfast d snack
2. Some types of honey can kill ....
   a bacteria b cuts c insects d bees
3. Honey helps .... to heal more quickly.
   a wounds b teeth c coughs d fevers
4. Don't put honey on your cut ....
   a arm b knee c head d ankle

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ancient Egyptians slept on reed ....
   a mats b bats c ovens d bricks
2. I have a pet .... at home.
   a frog b fan c ferry d leaf
3. We should get between eight and nine hours of .... every night.
   a sport b sleep c diet d exercise
4. Baby kangaroos can sit inside their mom's ....
   a eyes b ears c legs d pouch

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

fun - vacation - dive - restaurant - beach

Alexandria is a big city near the sea. I like spending my 1 .... there. My favorite place is the 2 .... I can swim and 3 .... under the water. It's great to go there and have 4 ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة

Last weekend I went to Cairo to visit my aunt Hoda. She had a new baby called Heba. I went to Luxor Station and took the train at eight o'clock in the morning. The train arrived at Cairo at eleven o'clock. Then, I took a taxi to my aunt's apartment.

My aunt lives near Al-Azhar Park. It's a famous park in Cairo. After I visited my aunt, I went to Al-Azhar Park. I sat on a bench under a big tree. I made a picnic with my cousin Omar. We enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park. I think **it**'s a fantastic place to visit.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**it**" refers to.................
   - a) a tree
   - b) Al-Azhar Park
   - c) the station
   - d) my aunt's apartment
2. The new baby is my.................
   - a) daughter
   - b) cousin
   - c) sister
   - d) friend

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence ---------------------
4. What did you enjoy in Al-Azhar Park? ---------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. living - here - Do - you - like? ---------------------
2. an ibis - and - met - Gabi - a snake. ---------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:(مجاب عنه اخر الكتاب)

1. Hoda .... (have) a sore throat last week.
2. My uncle is a very good .... (read) .

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

what is the matter, Ashraf ---------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Staying healthy

Guiding phrases

healthy food - balanced diet

----

3 محافظة القليوبية

إدارة غرب شبرا التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. I went to the countryside to visit my ....
   a aunt b uncle c grandpa d cousin
2. I felt .... with Noha in the countryside.
   a happy b active c bored d pleased
3. I had a/an .... lunch with Noha.
   a delicious b awful c poisonous d unhealthy
4. We watched TV in the ....
   a morning b evening c afternoon d midnight

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. The hospital is a place that treats..........
   a faucets b photos c patients d statues
2. A breeze is a little..........
   a lake b branch c trunk d wind
3. Last year, he couldn't ....chess, but now he can.
   a speak b play c ride d feel
4. My uncle works in a big food..........in Helwan.
   a bank b library c factory d museum

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

airport - tickets - suitcase - fly - cycle

My name's Malak. I'm packing my (1) .... I'll (2) .... to Japan with my father tomorrow. My father always travels to Japan for work. He buys (3) .... I'm happy to see the (4) .... and have my passport.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Pingo. I am a two-year old penguin. I live in the South Pole. A funny thing about me is that I am a bird with wings, but I can't fly! I use my wings to swim. They help me swim underwater really fast. Another funny thing about me is that some people say that I look like I'm wearing a fancy jacket. The black and white

colors help me hide from dangerous animals. I really love cold weather. My thick feathers make me pretty warm.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Penguins use their wings to..............................

   a eat b fly c sleep d swim

2. The black and white colors help penguins hide from dangerous..............................

   a jackets b photos c animals d people

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How old is Pingo? --

4. Where does Pingo, the penguin live? ------------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. can - Kangaroos - very - high - jump. ------------------------------
2. the weekend - you - free - Are - on? ------------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (مجاب عنه اخر الكتاب)

1. We drove to the café and ---------- (drink) some juice.
2. I don't ---------- (felt) well, doctor.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

reem is a good librarian --

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

"My house"

Guiding phrases

two armchairs - big kitchen





إدارة أشمون التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Rahma is in primary ....
   a three b four c six d five
2. Rahma has a big .... in her new apartment.
   a bathroom b bedroom c living room d kitchen
3. There are posters of .... in Rahma's bedroom.
   a animals b birds c flowers d shapes
4. There's a big .... to study on it.
   a bed b closet c cushion d desk

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We have a new .... which is much easier to cook in.
   a television b oven c closet d shower
2. Most tourists like staying in a .... on their vacation.
   a hotel b museum c market d factory
3. .... left, the supermarket is on the corner.
   a Catch b Turn c Use d Work
4. .... can sleep upside down on trees.
   a Snails b Pandas c Bats d Penguins

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

staff - bandages - corridors - crowded - patients

I read about a hospital in India. This hospital is very ❶ .... because it treats ❷ .... from all over the country. But the ❸ .... at this hospital teach the patients' families to look after their patients. The nurses become teachers and learn the family members how to change ❹ .... and give injections.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:
اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

In Ancient Egypt many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks which made very strong walls. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped them to do this. Some people painted their homes white to make them cooler.

A- Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1. Ancient Egyptians made their homes ____________ the Nile.

a far b in c under d near

2. Ancient Egyptians made their homes from ____________.

a mud bricks b wood c straw d reed

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What is the general idea of the text?

----

4. How did mud bricks help Ancient Egyptians?

----

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. has - Fatma - toothache - a. ------------------------------

2. is - matter - What - the - , Ahmed? ------------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:(مجاب عنه اخر الكتاب)

1. ---------- (are) you have a stomachache?

2. She didn't ---------- (sat) next to her best friend in class.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

do you have a cold ------------------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your trip to a wildlife park

Guiding questions

1- What did you see in the wildlife park?

2 - How was your trip at the end?



إدارة ههيا التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes ....
   a cool b hot c dirty d narrow
2. Ancient Egyptian .... all had flat roofs.
   a gardens b gates c homes d boxes
3. Families often cooked, ate and relaxed on the ....
   a papyrus b roof c floor d wall
4. There were .... mats to sit and sleep.
   a mud b reed c wooden d plastic

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. I saw many.......... in the museum.
   a doctors b cars c toys d monuments
2. I have a sore throat. I should.......... home.
   a hurt b stay c save d repeat
3. Spending time with your friends is good for your..........
   a health b food c sleep d cut
4. I'm.......... about my unwell friends.
   a unsafe b worried c polite d unfit

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

librarian - talk - rules - cell - return

When we go to our school library, we should follow the library ❶ .... .We shouldn't eat in the library. We can't use our ❷ .... phone. We should ask the ❸ .... if we need help. We should ❹ .... the book to its place.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Salwa is a student who lives in Diyarb Negm. She likes music and computer very much. She sends emails to her friends abroad. She wants to travel to London when she is older. Last month, she wanted to buy a new computer. She went to a computer shop in Zagazig with her father .She bought a new one and was very happy because the new computer is a **good** one.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of the word "**good**" is..............................
   a sad   b beautiful   c angry   d bad

2. Salwa went to the computer shop to buy the..............................
   a laptop   b tablet   c computer   d mouse

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Salwa like? ------------------------------
4. Who does Salwa send emails to? ------------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. homes - unusual - think of - What - you - do ? ------------------------------
2. the club - at - a good - We - day - had. ------------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:(مجاب عنه اخر الكتاب)

1. Don't .... (wasting) your time.
2. The trip I went yesterday was very .... (bored).

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

bats can fly at night ------------------------------

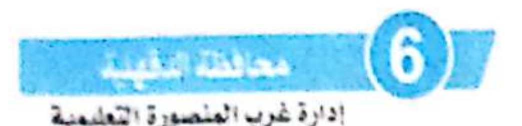
8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Healthy lifestyle

Guiding phrases

balanced diet - exercise daily



إدارة غرب المنصورة التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Ahmed lives in .... Governorate.
   a Giza b Cairo c Alexandria d Aswan
2. Alexandria is a big city in the .... of Egypt.
   a south b north c west d east
3. Alexandria is famous for the beautiful ....
   a beaches b stores c buildings d towns
4. Alexandria has a nice ....
   a time b park c weather d place

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We use .... to protect our skin from the sun.
   a honey b sunscreen c ice cream d jam
2. A .... is a friendly sea animal. It loves to play with people.
   a dolphin b lion c panda d shark
3. I live in the tenth floor, so I use the ....
   a shower b elevator c poster d bridge
4. In the past people used .... as medicine.
   a honey b juice c money d water

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

restaurant - capital - kind - sight - metal

We flew to Paris last vacation. Paris is the (1) .... city of France. I saw the Eiffel Tower. It's really tall and made of (2) .... I can speak French well. I learnt French at school. The French people were very (3) .... We went to a French (4) .... and had a wonderful meal.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة

Parrots are very beautiful birds. Some are big and others are small. They usually live in the rainforest. Many people like them because they have beautiful colors and

because some of them can talk. No one knows why parrots can talk. Parrots don't usually know what they are saying when they talk. They are only making sounds. Most parrots come from hot countries but they can live anywhere. Have you ever thought to buy one? It's very expensive.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... parrots can talk.
   a Some b All of c A lot of d No
2. Parrots are .... to buy
   a cheap b expensive c ugly d bad

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where do the parrots live? ....
4. Why do many people like parrots? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. doesn't - My - a - mother - toothache - have. ....
2. did - go - Where - you - yesterday? ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (مجاب عنه اخر الكتاب)

1. We are going cycling .... (in) the weekend.
2. Now I .... (could) play the piano.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

i love my school and my teachers ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A nice trip

Guiding questions

1- Where did you go?
2- What did you do there?

....

....

....



إدارة شرق طنطا التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Kareem is going on a school trip in the ....
   a fields b desert c countryside d nature trail
2. The desert is very .... in the day.
   a cold b nice c hot d cool
3. Kareem's friends will pack the ....
   a suitcase b first aid kit c school bag d wooden boxes
4. They will take bandages for ....
   a cuts b coughs c sunburns d fevers

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Beds, closets and tables are ....
   a fruits b furniture c vegetables d subjects
2. Don't .... noise in the library.
   a borrow b turn c make d jump
3. We use water for washing,cooking and ....
   a drinking b reading c writing d talking
4. A/An .... is a type of desert animal like a gazelle.
   a dinosaur b ibex c penguin d bat

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

lives - only - peaceful - stop - shops

I went to visit my grandparents in their village. The village is very quiet and ❶ ---------- . There are a few ❷ ---------- and houses. There is ❸ ---------- one restaurant, but it's great. Everyone who ❹ ---------- here is really friendly.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

It's Tuesday and Baher is at home. He can't go to school because he has a cold. He must stay in bed. He has a cough and a sore throat so he can't talk. The doctor says he must not run or play. He must sleep and drink a lot of water. All his family are worried about him. They hope he will get better soon.



A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about................................
   - a) Baher's school
   - b) Baher's doctor
   - c) Baher's family
   - d) Baher's illness
2. Baher has a................................
   - a) cold
   - b) backache
   - c) headache
   - d) toothache

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why can't Baher talk? ------------------------------------
4. What must Baher do to get better? ------------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. have - Do - toothache - you - a? ------------------------------
2. a professional - is - My - climber - uncle. ------------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:(مجاب عنه اخر الكتاب)

1. Does your science class start .... (on) 10 pm?
2. I ---------- (visit) my sick relative in hospital yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

what does your house look like ------------------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

The dugong

Guiding phrases

unusual animal - nickname is the sea cow



إدارة الإسماعيلية التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ancient Egyptians made their homes near the ....
   a desert b Nile c fields d parks
2. They used .... from the river.
   a sand b fish c mud d grass
3. They used mud to make .... for their homes.
   a boxes b bricks c pots d baskets
4. The mud bricks helped their homes to be ....
   a white b hot c cool d wide

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I saw a lot of .... at the museum.
   a paintings b fields c factories d clouds
2. We need a .... to travel to different countries.
   a message b passport c diary d show
3. We can .... books from the library.
   a buy b sell c borrow d lose
4. You can keep your money safely in the ....
   a museum b restaurant c bank d shopping mall

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

ungrateful - rested - fell - shade - point

One day, two travelers were exhausted. They ① .... under the tree. Then they enjoyed the ② .... and the cool breeze. They soon ③ .... asleep. When they woke up, they were hungry. They were ④ .... because they said that the tree was useless and had no food.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Last summer in August, I was sitting by the window in the evening, reading a story. Suddenly, I heard a strange sound coming from my garden. I was scared

because I couldn't see anything from the dark outside. I called my parents and went out to the garden with a torch. I found my neighbor's dog. It jumped into our garden. I took **it** to my neighbor, Mr Essam. He is a vet and looks after animals. He thanked me and invited me to have dinner with him.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The writer couldn't see anything because it was ....
   a cold   b light   c dark   d raining
2. The underlined word "it" refers to the ....
   a dog   b garden   c story   d torch

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What's Mr. Essam's job? ....
4. What did the writer find in the garden? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. works - food - in - My uncle - a big - factory ....
2. movies - going - How about - the - to - tonight? ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (مجاب عنه اخر الكتاب)

1. We .... (could to) help our mother last week.
2. Stay home and .... (sleeping) well.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

how long did you live in Giza ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A wonderful day

Guiding questions

1- Where did you spend that day?
2- What could you do there?

....

....

....



إدارة بورسعيد التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Yesterday, I had a bad..............................
   - a earache
   - b toothache
   - c headache
   - d stomachache
2. The dentist gave me ....
   - a money
   - b honey
   - c medicine
   - d bandages
3. I should brush my teeth before and after each..............................
   - a day
   - b meal
   - c month
   - d sleep
4. I should visit the..............................every month.
   - a nurse
   - b doctor
   - c vet
   - d dentist

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. ....have shells and they don't have legs or arms.
   - a Dolphins
   - b Pandas
   - c Lions
   - d Snails
2. That phone is very.............................., but I want to buy a cheaper one.
   - a active
   - b expensive
   - c careful
   - d boring
3. My parents didn't buy that couch because it was..............................
   - a uncomfortable
   - b friendly
   - c unhappy
   - d irregular
4. The Ancient Egyptians used..............................to make bricks.
   - a mud
   - b wool
   - c cotton
   - d papyrus

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

left - on - directions - straight - to

My friend Samy wanted to go to the museum. He had a map in his bag. He looked at the (1) .... on the map. He went (2) .... and turned (3) .... at the end of the road. The museum was (4) .... his left.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name's Hana. I was born in Cairo and I lived there for 12 years. Then, my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a new apartment in Port Said. I liked living in Port Said. It's a small, clean and quiet city. We can go to the beach at



any time. There are many parks. My new apartment is big. It has three bedrooms, one kitchen, two bathrooms and a big living room. There's a fantastic balcony.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hana is from .... now.

   a Port Said   b Alexandria   c Cairo   d Aswan

2. Hana's new apartment is ....

   a big   b small   c high   d fat

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where can they go in Port Said? ------------------------------

4. How many bedrooms are there in Hana's new apartment? --------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. speaks - dad - well - My - English. ------------------------------

2. kangaroos - do - Where - live - the? ------------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (مجاب عنه اخر الكتاب)

1. Mohammad Salah is a very ---------- (fame) footballer.

2. Laila ---------- (isn't) have a sore throat yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

it s a perfect day for walking. ------------------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A visit to Alexandria

Guiding phrases

lots of amazing restaurants
swim in the sea and play on the beach



إدارة ابو حمص التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Last .... I had a wonderful day out.

   a year b month c week d weekend

2. I had a wonderful day out with my ....

   a friends b cousins c family d grandparents

3. I could see .... through the trees.

   a giraffes b lions c pandas d kangaroos

4. The kangaroos were very ....

   a boring b scary c interesting d awful

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I can speak French ....

   a fit b bright c well d bad

2. Ahmed .... his ankle at a basketball practice.

   a swam b told c hurt d came

3. You need a .... to travel to different countries.

   a message b passport c diary d show

4. Do you .... a toothache?

   a put b find c have d meet

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

pots - wooden - roofs - reed - cover

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes were very different form today. They were (1) .... mats to sit on and sleep. They used papyrus to (2) .... the windows and doors. In every home, there were large (3) .... and baskets for storing crops and (4) .... boxes for clothes.





4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I went with my friend Hisham to the theme park on vacation. We went on different rides. The weather was nice. We had lunch and ice cream. We took lots of photos with my phone. We had a wonderful time. Then,we went home by taxi at five o'clock.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They took lots of photos with the writer's.................................

   a camera   b tablet   c phone   d computer

2. They went home by...............................

   a car   b taxi   c metro   d bus

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Who did the writer go with at the theme park? ------------------------
4. What could they see at the theme park? ------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. Fares - How - feel - does - today? ------------------------
2. cities - of - the most - This is - one - exciting. ------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (مجاب عنه اخر الكتاب)

1. Mr John .... (travel) all over Egypt on his last vacation.
2. Dalia eats unhealthy food and she's .... (fit), too.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how long did you live here ------------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A headache

Guiding phrases

go to doctor's - give pills



إدارة برج العرب التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. My father moved to a new.............................. .
   a building b apartment c house d tent
2. The new kitchen is.............................. than the old kitchen.
   a smaller b longer c bigger d quieter
3. There's a/an..............................in the kitchen.
   a table b chair c oven d mat
4. There are two armchairs in the.............................. .
   a bedroom b living room c kitchen d bathroom

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm going to get..............................at the bank.
   a clothes b food c money d books
2. A..............................swims in a group with his family in the ocean.
   a parrot b dolphin c kangaroo d bat
3. A:..............................do you get to school? B: Go straight on.
   a How b When c What d Who
4. We can see a great view from our.............................. .
   a oven b closet c balcony d cushion

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

set - sand - walk - arrived - fire

We went to a school trip in the desert. We ❶ .... on the weekend and ❷ .... up our tent. It's quite difficult to sleep in a tent on ❸ .... ! At night, we sat around a ❹ .... We sang songs and ate delicious food which we cooked on the fire.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Omar and his family went to the zoo last summer. They arrived at nine in the morning. They saw many different animals there. Omar's favorite animal is the

giraffe. It is a very tall animal. Omar's father gave the monkey two bananas. They also saw the lions, the tigers and the kangaroos. It was a **wonderful** trip. They went back home at five o'clock.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about a.............................. .

a party   b social media   c beach   d trip to the zoo

2. The underlined word "**wonderful**" means.............................. .

a nice   b bad   c sad   d cold

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What is Omar's favorite animal? ------------------------------

4. When did they go back home? ------------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. penguins - the - live - Where - do? ------------------------------

2. Japan - We - will - to - fly - tomorrow. ------------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (مجاب عنه اخر الكتاب)

1. Let's ---------- (going) to Al-Azhar Park.

2. Hisham couldn't ---------- (played) a guitar at seven.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

did you go to the market ------------------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Alexandria

Guiding phrases

exciting place - beautiful beaches



إدارة بني سويف التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Sally is going to the.................... tomorrow.
   a bank b station c library d restaurant
2. Rana's favorite animal is the.....................
   a kangaroo b panda c giraffe d lion
3. Sally and her.................... will pick up Rana at 4.
   a sister b father c brother d mother
4. They will go home by.....................
   a bus b car c taxi d metro

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Don't.................... up flowers from the park.
   a pick b keep c spend d put
2. It's important to eat.................... food.
   a unkind b healthy c sick d bad
3. Cairo is the capital.................... of Egypt.
   a village b country c valley d city
4. We use.................... to look at things in the distance.
   a tracks b bones c binoculars d skeletons

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

take - sent - last - world - fly

Today I received an email from my friend, Amir. He's traveling around the 1 .... with his family. They were in India 2 .... week. He 3 .... me nice photos with his family. He will 4 .... to Italy tomorrow.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I like eating honey for breakfast. I have many jars of honey in my kitchen. It's very useful. We can put honey in some food like sweet basbousa. **It** is also used

as a treatment for some injuries. When you cough, you can mix honey with lemon to get better. You can drink honey with lemon when you have a cold, too.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you have a cold, you can mix honey with..............................

   a tea b lemon c juice d water

2. The underlined word "It" refers to..............................

   a honey b food c lemon d milk

B- Answer the following questions:

3. When do you eat honey? ------------------------------
4. Why is honey useful? ------------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. leaves - lovely - This - has - tree. ------------------------------
2. did - last - week - What - buy - you? ------------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:(مجاب عنه اخر الكتاب)

1. We're flying to Morocco .... (in) January 25th.
2. Who .... (does) Seleem meet yesterday?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

It s nice to visit aswan. ------------------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Eiffel Tower

File Fact:

Place:	Paris, France
Made of:	Metal



إدارة العدوة التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Noha is interested in ....
   a history b social media c nature d colors

2. The kangaroo lives in ....
   a France b India c Australia d London

3. The penguins live in .... places.
   a cold b hot c warm d nice

4. Penguins are black and ....
   a blue b white c green d yellow

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Our town has a shopping ....
   a male b mall c mole d mail
2. We're eating at the .... behind the park.
   a bank b museum c restaurant d library
3. Bats can .... upside down on trees.
   a sleep b sing c swim d speak
4. .... are funny and friendly sea animals.
   a Whales b Lions c Parrots d Dolphins

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

branches - useless - lived - trunk - shelter

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot dry land. It had 1 .... for many years. Its 2 .... was very wide. It had many 3 .... It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived and it gave 4 .... and rest to hundreds of traders as they moved across the country.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

It's Wednesday and Mona is at home. She can't go to school because she has a sore throat. She can't talk. Her mother took her to the doctor. The doctor says she

must not go outside. She must sleep and drink hot drinks. All his family and friends are worried about her. They hope she will get better soon.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Today is..............................

   a Monday   b Friday   c Tuesday   d Wednesday

2. Mona has a..............................

   a sore throat   b backache   c headache   d toothache

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Who are worried about Mona? ------------------------------
4. Where did her mother take her? ------------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. enough - important - get - sleep - It's - to. ------------------------------
2. did - eat - the park - What - you - in? ------------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (مجاب عنه اخر الكتاب)

1. What lesson did Gabi ---------- (learnt) at the end of the story?
2. My favorite ---------- (teaching) is Miss Mona, she's very kind and helpful.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i play in a basketball team ------------------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Al-Azhar Park

Guiding questions

What things did you do in Al-Azhar Park?
Who did you go with?



إدارة الفتح التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Aya loves her................................
   - a balcony
   - b living room
   - c closet
   - d bedroom

2. Aya shares the bedroom with her................................
   - a parents
   - b cousin
   - c sister
   - d friend

3. Mona's bed is on the................................
   - a left
   - b right
   - c corner
   - d side

4. There's a big................................in the living room.
   - a television
   - b armchair
   - c lamp
   - d shower

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My mom usually uses the................................to bake cakes.
   - a oven
   - b armchair
   - c bedroom
   - d television

2. Hisham was very................................because he missed the bus.
   - a unfair
   - b unlucky
   - c unkind
   - d unfriendly

3. I can't hear well. I have a/an................................
   - a backbone
   - b sore throat
   - c cough
   - d earache

4. We took a................................boat trip on the River Nile.
   - a relaxing
   - b delicious
   - c polite
   - d bored

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

hours - nickname - writing - cute - photo

I'm making a project at school about my favorite unusual animal. I'm ❶ ---------- about the dugong. It's got a lovely friendly face and it's very ❷ ---------- . Its ❸ ---------- is the sea cow and it spends many ❹ ---------- eating grass from the sea bed.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw a tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under

that tree, where there's some shade". "That's a very good idea," said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. Then, they enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze. As they were **exhausted**, they soon fell asleep.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**exhausted**" means very..................................

   a relaxed   b happy   c cool   d tired

2. Under the tree, there was some..................................

   a shade   b water   c fruit   d honey

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where did the travelers rest? --
4. What did they enjoy? --

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. **Look** ! - going - a photo - I'm - take - to. --
2. you - **Do** - play - again - want to - basketball? --

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (مجاب عنه اخر الكتاب)

1. Uncle Youssef is very ---------- (**interesting**) in the rocks.
2. Please ---------- (**picking**) up that trash.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

do we study English on Monday --

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your school trip

Guiding questions

1 Where did you go?
2 How did you spend your time there?





إدارة سوهاج التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Dalia likes .... about different things.
   a writing b blogging c reading d talking
2. Dalia is writing about unusual ....
   a animals b insects c homes d sports
3. Dalia found the upside down house in ....
   a the Netherlands b France c Marrakech d Amman
4. People are changing the house to make it ....
   a bigger b modern c cleaner d higher

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. There's a .... in my club to swim in.
   a spoon b roof c pool d mall
2. I didn't arrive at school on ....
   a hour b time c clock d watch
3. My mother bought a long .... to wear.
   a fan b van c scarf d ferry
4. I couldn't see the birds in the sky well, so I used my ....
   a glasses b binoculars c tickets d suitcases

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

learn - dig - job - bones - archaeologist

My name's Ramy. I'm in primary five. I want to be an (1) .... like my uncle Youssef. It's a cool (2) .... and important, too. It helps us (3) .... about the past. We look for things and (4) .... underground to find objects for many years ago and study them.



4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Adham. My uncle Ziad is sick in a hospital in Giza. Our relatives visit him. There are many **patients**. The hospital treats patients from all over the country. The nurses are very friendly. The doctors help patients and give them medicine. My father and I visit my uncle every day. There are many people in the hospital. The hospital is very crowded on Fridays. It is so clean. I hope my uncle will get well soon.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**patients**" means .... people.

   a sad   b sick   c happy   d tall

2. The hospital is in ....

   a Giza   b Aswan   c Cairo   d Alexandria

B- Answer the following questions:

3. When is the hospital very crowded? ------------------------------
4. What do the doctors give patients? ------------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. does - Where - hurt - Doha - leg - her? ------------------------------
2. the - place - is - favorite - My - beach. ------------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (مجاب عنه اخر الكتاب)

1. What did you ---------- (**doing**) last weekend?
2. My trip to Al-Azhar Park was ---------- (**amazed**).

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

Where did you stay in aswan ------------------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

The bats

Guiding questions

1- When do bats fly?
2- How do bats sleep?



A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع واختر:



1. Huda's new apartment is .... than her old one. (smaller - bigger - thinner)
2. There's a big .... in Huda's bedroom. (oven - closet - TV)
3. Huda lived in her old apartment about .... years. (11 - 12 - 13)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue: اقرأ وأكمل:

get - medicine - matter - cold

Doctor : What is the ...., Adel?

Adel : I don't feel well. I have a ....

Doctor : OK. Stay home, sleep well and take this ....

Adel : Thank you, doctor. I hope I will .... better.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الاسئلة التالية:

I'm Abeer. I'm in primary five. My brother is in primary four. My father is a doctor and my mother is a teacher. I like to read about animals. The kangaroo jumps on two legs. I like the parrot. It's very beautiful and colorful. The lion is a very big cat. It's very strong. Last week, we went to the wildlife park. Our father took us by his car. We saw a lot of different animals. We were very happy.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. What does Abeer like to read?

....

2. How does Abeer go to the wildlife?

....



B - Choose the correct answer:

3. They went to the wildlife park.............................days ago. (five - seven - nine)

4. The.............................jumps on two legs. (lion - parrot - kangaroo)

5. Abeer is.............................than her brother. (older - younger - youngest)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We need.............................for drinking, cooking and washing.
   a oil b water c wool
2. I.............................in the park yesterday.
   a am b was c were
3. The.............................has no legs or arms.
   a parrot b snail c lion
4. I.............................speak English when I was five.
   a can't b couldn't c can
5. I spent my.............................in Alexandria last month. It was a good holiday.
   a vacation b job c apartment

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. fast - car - She - the - drove. ------------------------------------
2. go - to - Can - we - the - library? ------------------------------------
3. honey - When - you - do - eat? ------------------------------------
4. a skeleton - This - of - is - a dinosaur. ------------------------------------
5. from - water - Where - come - does? ------------------------------------





(A) Reading

1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text:
اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

pouch - beautiful - animals - parrots

My cousin Nabil went to a wildlife park with his family. He saw lots of different a .... His favorite birds are the b .... They were so c .... He saw the little kangaroos inside their mom's d ....

2 Read and match A with B:
اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Dinosaurs were	a. on Thursday.
2 Many tourists come	b. is poisonous.
3 I go swimming	c. to visit Egypt.
4 Be careful, the snake	d. very big animals.
	e. a new job.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:
اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

In summer holidays, my friends like to visit a lot of places. They went to Cairo last summer. They traveled by train. They visited the Egyptian Museum and saw lots of paintings. Then, they went to Al-Azhar Park and had a big picnic under the trees. They enjoyed all beautiful plants and birds in the park.

Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Last summer , my friends went to ....

   a Cairo   b Luxor   c Tanta   d Aswan

2. They traveled by ....

   a taxi   b bus   c train   d car

3. They saw .... in the Egyptian Museum.

   a paintings   b plants   c birds   d trains

4. They had a big .... in Al-Azhar Park.

   a cake   b picnic   c pizza   d party



(B) Writing



Choose the correct from the following sentences from a, b or c:

اختر الجمل الصحيحة:

1. can - stay - How - you - healthy?

a How stay can healthy you?

b How healthy you stay can?

c How can you stay healthy?

2. live - ice - snow - Penguins - and - on.

a Penguins ice and snow on live.

b Penguins live on ice and snow.

c Penguins live and ice on snow.



Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

رتب العبارات الآتية لتكوين فقرة:

a I went to Alexandria.	1- ( )
b After that, I swam in the sea.	2- ( )
c Yesterday, I had a vacation.	3- ( )
d Then, I visited the beach.	4- ( )



6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

١- محافظة القاهرة

1. Can I have some medicine, please?
2. We couldn't drive a car, but now we can.

٢- محافظة الجيزة

1. Hoda had a sore throat last week.
2. My uncle is a very good reader.

٣- محافظة القليوبية

1. We drove to the café and drank some juice.
2. I don't feel well, doctor.

٤- محافظة المنوفية

1. Do you have a stomachache?
2. She didn't sit next to her best friend in class.

٥- محافظة الشرقية

1. Don't waste your time.
2. The trip I went to yesterday was very boring.

٦- محافظة الدقهلية

1. We are going cycling on the weekend.
2. Now I can play the piano.

٧- محافظة الغربية

1. Does your science class start at 10 pm?
2. I visited my unwell relative in hospital.

٨- محافظة الإسماعيلية

1. We could help our mother last week.
2. Stay home and sleep well.

٩- محافظة بورسعيد

1. Mohammad Salah is a very famous footballer.
2. Laila didn't have a sore throat yesterday.

١٠- محافظة البحيرة

1. Mr John traveled all over Egypt on his last vacation.
2. Dalia eats unhealthy food and she's unfit , too.

١١- محافظة الاسكندرية

1. Let's go to Al-Azhar Park.
2. Hisham couldn't play a guitar at seven.

١٢- محافظة بني سويف

1. We're flying to Morocco on January 25th.
2. Who did Seleem meet yesterday?

١٣- محافظة المنيا

1. What lesson did Gabi learn at the end of the story?
2. My favorite teacher is Miss Mona, she's very kind and helpful.

١٤- محافظة أسيوط

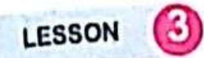
1. Uncle Youssef is very interested in the rocks.
2. Please pick up that trash.

١٥- محافظة سوهاج

1. What did you do last weekend?
2. My trip to Al-Azhar Park was amazing.







Narrator: Student's Book, Unit 7, Lesson 3, page 13. Exercise 9. Listen and write the words you hear.

1- wood 2- flood 3- book
4- cook 5- tool 6- blood

Unit 9

LESSON 

Narrator: Student's Book, Unit 9, Lesson 3, page 42, Exercise 1. Listen and repeat the words.

1- teacher 2- reader 3- climber
4- footballer 5- farmer 6- traveler

Narrator: Student's Book, Unit 9, Lesson 3, page 42, Exercise 2. Listen again and write th -er words. (repeat of TR 2.21)

Narrator: Student's Book, Unit 9, Lesson 3, page 45, Exercise 7. Listen and circle the word you hear. Then listen again and check.

1- west 2- whale 3- vase
4- vet 5- volcano 6- winter

Narrator: Student's Book, Unit 9, Lesson 3, page 45, Exercise 8. Listen and write the words.

1- wheel 2- vest 3- volcano
4- west 5- whale 6- vet
7- watermelon 8- wet 9- violin

Narrator: Student's Book, Unit 9, Lesson 3, page 45, Exercise 9. Listen and write. Then listen again and check.

Last Wednesday I decided to travel west in my boat wearing my vest. I was looking for a volcano but I had some problems. I met some whales and they turned over my boat. I had to sit on my violin to stay afloat! I ate watermelon to stay healthy and I came to shore. I didn't find the volcano, but I met some vets and they took me home to my village!

Review 3

LESSON 

Narrator: Student's Book, Review 3, Lesson 2, page 52, Exercise 3. Put the dialog in the correct order. Listen, check, and repeat. Then act it out in pairs.

Nurse: Come in, Kareem. What's the matter?

Kareem: I have an earache.

Nurse: Oh dear. Did you hit your ear with a ball?

Kareem: No, I had an earache when I woke up this morning.

Nurse: Let me see. Yes, it is red inside. I think you should go home. I'll telephone your mom.

Kareem: Thank you, nurse.

Narrator: Student's Book, Review 3, Lesson 2, page 53, Exercise 4. Listen then write the words you hear. Then match the words and pictures.

1- panda 2- penguin 3- dolphin
4- rabbit 5- snail 6- whale



Narrator: Student's Book, Unit 10, Lesson 1, page 59, Exercise 4. Listen. Match the places and people.

Narrator: 1 Sara

Sara: I'm going to visit my aunt and uncle. We're going by train.

Narrator: 2 Ahmed

Ahmed: My cousin is visiting us and we're going to show him around. He's never seen the Pyramids.

Narrator: 3 Dina

Dina: We went on a school trip to find out how cotton is turned into clothes like T-shirts and dresses.

Narrator: 4 Youssef

Youssef: I want to borrow some books.

LESSON 

Narrator : **Student's Book, Unit 10, Lesson 2, Page 63, Exercise 8. Listen. Write the letters on the map.**

Number A:

Ahmed: Excuse me, how can I get to the train station?

Police officer: You can walk in the Park Avenue. Go straight to the Main Street and cross the Station Road. It's on your left.

Number B:

Adel: Where's the supermarket, please?

Nabil: Go straight to the Park Avenue. Walk in the Main Street. Cross the Station Road. It's on your right.

Number C:

Samir: Is there a café here?

Ayman: Yes, go straight to the Park Avenue. Walk in the Main Street. Cross the Station Road. It's next to the supermarket.

Review 4

LESSON 

Narrator: **Student's Book , Review 4, Lesson 1, page 100, Exercise 1. Write the missing letters. Listen and check.**

1- dinosaur
2- passport
3- skeleton
4- tracks
5- binoculars
6- suitcase
7- archacologist
8- station

LESSON 

Narrator: **Student's Book , Review 4, Lesson 2, page 102, Exercise 1. Listen and complete with the correct sound.**

1- bathroom
2- enjoy
3- write
4- gray
5- play
6- mother

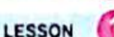
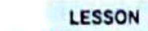


Listening Material (Exercises & Tests)



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة باسئلة الاستماع الواردة فى الوحدات والاختبارات

Unit 7

LESSON 1 

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

My name is Fatma. I live in a modern apartment. There are four rooms in the apartment. The living room is next to the bedroom. I have three armchairs in the living room. The kitchen is big. I bake bread in the oven.



LESSON 3 

The Nile was very important in Ancient Egypt. Ancient Egyptians used it to travel from one place to another. They used mud bricks from the Nile to build their houses. All the roofs in Ancient Egypt were flat. These were the coolest part of the house. Ancient Egyptians sat and slept on reed mats. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside.

LESSON 4 

I'm Dalia. I went to my uncle's farm yesterday.He's a farmer. He lives in an old farmhouse. He keeps many animals. He has cows, chickens, goats and sheep. I played with the goats. They were very funny. My uncle grows wheat and tomatoes. The fields are brilliant. I enjoyed my day.

Al-Azhar Exercises

1. Listen and choose the correct answer:

My uncle is a vet .He loves animals.He has two children.His wife is a teacher.They are happy.

Activity Unit 7 

My name is Ahmed. I live in a big house with my parents and my brother Hany. I love my bedroom. I share it with my brother.My bedroom is white and green. There is my bed with a desk next to it. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

Unit 8 

LESSON 1 

My friend Amr didn't go the club yesterday. He had a cold. He has a sore throat. He didn't come to the football practice. He went to the doctor. The doctor told him to have hot drinks. Amr should stay home.

LESSON 3 

My friend Hazem was ill yesterday. He went to the doctor's. Hazem had a stomachache. His stomach hurts. The doctor said to him to stay home. Hazem took the medicine and felt well.

LESSON 4 

My Name is Doaa. I like honey very much. When I have a sore throat. I have honey with lemon. Honey is very useful. It's used as a treatment. Honey is the sweetest substance on Earth. Some types of honey can kill bacteria. It's so good for healing wounds and treating illness

Al-Azhar Exercises

I get up at six o'clock. I have my breakfast with my parents. I like honey.Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years.

Activity Unit 8 

I like healthy food. It is really important to eat healthy food like fruit and vegetables. We should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep our body moving. Playing sports at school or with friends is a good way to exercise. Another thing, you should sleep between eight and nine hours every night.

Unit 9 

LESSON 1 

My uncle has a parrot in his house. It's colorful. Its name is Pingo. My uncle puts food and water for Pingo every day. The parrot can talk and repeat what we say. It has a beautiful beak and feathers.

LESSON 2 

When Hisham was five, he could swim and talk. His brother was two years younger than him. Nabil couldn't talk or walk, but he could listen to music. Now, Hisham is ten years old. He can use a computer. He can play chess, too. Nabil is eight years old. He can swim and sing.

LESSONS 4&5 

I watched a programme about sea animals on TV last week. I saw the dugong. It's unusual anima. It's very cute. Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

Al-Azhar Exercises

I like birds. My favorite bird is the parrot. It is so beautiful and it can talk. I say some words for it to repeat.

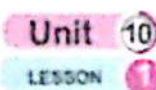
Activity Unit 9

My favorite animal is the penguin. It lives in the ocean. It's a friendly animal. It swims in a group with his family. It looks cute and cold. It eats fish. I did a project about the penguin at school. My science teacher was very happy about my project.

Review 3

Activity on units 7, 8 & 9

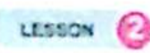
I'm Fatma. I live in Giza. When my parents had to move to a new job, we moved to a closer apartment. It's a bigger apartment. It has four rooms. The kitchen is bigger. There's more space so we can have a bigger television in the living room. I like our new apartment.



Unit 10

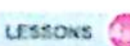
LESSON 1

My name is Adel. Every year, I go to Alexandria with my family. Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. It's a very big city. We always stay in a comfortable hotel near the beach. We always have lunch at a big restaurant.



LESSON 2

We should encourage our children to visit the library and read books. The library is not the place for running or loud noises. The children should keep the library clean. They should ask the librarian if they need help.



LESSONS

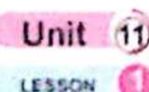
Hi, I'm Salma! I live in a small town. I live in a big house with my parents and my brother, Mohamed. There is a park next to our house. After school, I like to play in the park with my friends. On the other side of the park is my school.

Al-Azhar Exercises

Yesterday, I visited Alexandria with my friends. Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants and museums. There's even a beach.

Activity Unit 10

I'm Hany. I go to Alexandria with my friends. Alexandria is a big city. We always stay in a hotel near the train station. We always have lunch at a big restaurant.



Unit 11

LESSON 1

I'm Osama. I went to Dubai last month. There are many high-rise buildings. I stayed in a lovely hotel room. There was a big swimming pool on the roof of the hotel. It was amazing. I went on a boat trip and went on rides at the theme park.



LESSON 2

Tourists visit many places in Egypt every year. They always want to check in to a comfortable hotel. They try traditional Egyptian food. They visit the Egyptian Museum. They also visit the old parts of Cairo. They like to go to Luxor and Aswan in winter.



LESSON 3

Hani can do a lot of activities on vacation. Hani goes to Alexandria in the summer. He always goes there with his family. They can see the beach as they stay in
a hotel in front of the sea. They swim in the sea and make sandcastles on the beach.

Al-Azhar Exercises

Ali is farmer. He gets up early. Ali grows vegetables and keeps animals.

Activity Unit 11

Ramy and Adam are friends. They are in primary five. Ramy likes playing football. He wants to play football after school on Thursday. Adam likes swimming. He goes swimming on Friday with his sister, Rawan. Ramy and Adam have a good time.

Review 4

Activity on units 10, 11 & 12



Yesterday, I decided to go to on vacation to Alexandria. I like to spend my summer holiday there to enjoy swimming on the beach. I packed my suitcase. I took my swimming suit, shorts, T-shirts and my sunglasses. I stayed in a big hotel near the beach. I saw a lot of tourists there. I had a wonderful holiday.



1 امتحان محافظة القاهرة

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

My uncle is a scientist. Yesterday he traveled to Africa for work. He likes doing experiments on animals in the desert. The people in Africa were friendly and helped him.



2 امتحان محافظة الجيزة

I like eating honey for breakfast. Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. But don't put it on your cut knee.

3 امتحان محافظة القليوبية

I went to the countryside to visit my cousin Noha. I felt bored with Noha. I had a delicious lunch with Noha. Then, we watched TV in the evening.



(4) امتحان محافظة المنوفية

Rahma is twelve years old. She is in primary five. She has a big bedroom in her new apartment. She loves her bedroom. She spends most of time in her bedroom. There are posters of flowers on the walls of her bedroom. There's a big desk to study on it, too.

(5) امتحان محافظة الشرقية

People in Ancient Egypt used mud bricks to keep their homes cool. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed, and slept there on hot nights. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on.

(6) امتحان محافظة الدقهلية

My friend Ahmed lives in Alexandria Governorate. He likes living there. Alexandria is a big city in the north of Egypt. It's famous for the beautiful beaches. It has a nice weather.

(7) امتحان محافظة الغربية

Kareem is going on a school trip to the desert in the summer. The weather is very hot in the day and very cold at night. Kareem and his friends will pack the first aid kit. They will take bandages for cuts and sunscreen for sunburns. They will put scissors and medical gloves, too.

(8) امتحان محافظة الاسماعيلية

In the past, Ancient Egyptians made their homes near the Nile. They used mud from the river to make bricks for their homes. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped to do this.

(9) امتحان محافظة بورسعيد

Yesterday, I had a bad toothache. My father took me to the dentist. The dentist gave me medicine and told me to eat healthy food. But I like chocolate and sweet things. I should brush my teeth before and after each meal. I should visit the dentist every month.

(10) امتحان محافظة البحيرة

Last month, I had a wonderful day out with my family. I went to the new wildlife park. It was awesome. I could see lions through the trees and the kangaroos very were interesting.

(11) امتحان محافظة الاسكندرية

My father moved to a new apartment last week. He had a new job in Cairo. I love this new apartment. It's very big. The new kitchen is bigger than the old kitchen. There's an oven. There are two armchairs in the living room.

(12) امتحان محافظة بني سويف

Sally is going to get money at the bank tomorrow. Her sister Rana likes the zoo. She will go to the zoo at ten o'clock. Her favorite animal is the panda. Sally and her father will go to the bank. Then, they will pick up Rana at four o'clock. After that, they will go home by taxi.

(13) امتحان محافظة المنيا

My friend Noha is interested in social media. She likes learning a lot of information about animals. She learns that the kangaroo lives in Australia. Her favorite animal is the penguin. Penguins are black and white. They live in cold places.

(14) امتحان محافظة اسيوط

Aya's father bought a new apartment. Aya loves her bedroom. It's very big. She shares her bedroom with her sister Mona. Aya's bed is on the left and Mona's bed is on the right. There's a big television in the living room.

(15) امتحان محافظة سوهاج

Hi! My name's Dalia and I like blogging about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual homes. This topic is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect so she sometimes takes me to see some brilliant places. I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online. It's upside down. It's actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern.

(16) امتحان الازهر الشريف

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Huda moved to a new apartment yesterday. Her new apartment is bigger than the old one. There's a big closet in Huda's bedroom. Huda lived in her old apartment about thirteen years.